ARTEP 10-602-MTP

MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR
HEADQUARTERS,
PETROLEUM GROUP

JULY 2003

Department of the Army

ARMY TRAINING AND	HEADQUARTERS
EVALUATION PROGRAM	DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
No. 10-602-MTP	Washington, DC, 10 July 2003

Mission Training Plan
For
Headquarters, Petroleum Group

Table Of Contents

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

*This publication supersedes ARTEP 10-602-MTP, dated 22 September 1993.

Preface

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the Headquarters Company Commander and Training Officer with a task-based, event-driven training strategy to enable the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. While MTPs may not cover unit contingency plans, this document includes tasks to meet the Army force projection mission and includes tasks related to deployment, relocation of the unit to a new operating site, establishment of logistics operational areas, base defense, life support functions and redeployment.

This MTP applies to Headquarters, Petroleum Group (TOE 10602L000), The Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team (TOE 10560LM00), and Quartermaster Base laboratory (TOE 10560LA00) The Petroleum Group provides command and control to assigned and attached units; plans and directs petroleum and water operations in support of units in or passing through the support group's assigned area of operations; and plans and directs the provision of general supply and maintenance support. The Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team provides liaison and coordination for bulk petroleum support between US, allied forces, and the host nation. It communicates available bulk petroleum data to higher headquarters, determine mode of transportation required for bulk petroleum shipments from non-US military activities to US forces, and ensures that proper quality surveillance procedures are used to meet US military standards. The Quartermaster Petroleum Base laboratory provides limited quality assurance testing for a petroleum group or theater army area, and technical assistance for handling, storing, sampling, identifying, and performing quality evaluation of petroleum products and their containers. It also identifies sources of contaminations and the level of deterioration for bulk aviation fuels, ground fuels, and package products, as well as make recommendation for proper use, reclamation, or disposition of contaminated or deteriorated products.

Standards for executing the tasks are described in the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs). Standards were developed to meet the Total Army requirement. To meet mission-essential requirements, commanders may wish to make standards more stringent. The intent of this publication is not to deny the commander that flexibility.

Training developers continuously update individual and collective tasks and other support products for these manuals in the Automated Systems Approach to Training (ASAT) database. Units can get data updates online at the Reimer Digital Library Data Repository at http://155.217.58.100/dr/

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 and forward it to Commander, United States Army Combined Arms Support Command, ATTN: ATCL-AL, 401 1st Street, Suite 235A, Fort Lee, Virginia 23801.

Unless otherwise stated, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both women and men.

Chapter 1

Unit Training

1-1.   General. This mission training plan (MTP) provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program depend on the following factors:

a.   Unit's mission-essential task list (METL).

b.   Chain of command training directives and guidance.

c.   Training priorities of the unit.

d.   Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2.   Supporting Material.   This MTP describes a critical mission-oriented unit-training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. The training program should cover all the training necessary for soldiers to be able to perform their missions. The program should be based on this MTP as well as on the following:

a.   The soldiers training publications (STPs), which include soldiers' manuals (SMs) and trainers guide (TGs) for each military occupational specialty (MOS) authorized in the table of organization and equipment (TOE) for the unit.

b.   Soldiers' manuals of common tasks (SMCTs).

c.   Officer Foundation Standards (OFS) manuals for Officer personnel.

1-3.   Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and two appendices:

a.   Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program. It includes doctrinal principles and implications outlined in FM 7-0, Training the Force. Based on these guidelines, commanders must tailor the information to meet the doctrinal requirements for their specific branch.

b.   Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the relationship between missions, collective tasks, and individual tasks.

c.   Chapter 3, Mission Outline, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d.   Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a field training exercise (FTX) and supporting situational training exercises (STXs). This chapter provides training

information and a pre-constructed scenario for each exercise. These exercises can serve as part of an internal or external evaluation and may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e.   Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&Eos), provides the training and evaluation criteria for tasks that the unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task has a training and evaluation outline that identifies task steps, performance measures, and individual and leader tasks, and opposing force (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f.   Chapter 6, External Evaluations, provides instructions for planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g.   Appendix A, Combined Arms Training Strategy, provides user information, a description of the training strategy, and a task template.

h.   Appendix B, Battlefield Operating Systems (BOSs) Definitions, provides current descriptions of each BOS.

1-4.   Training Requirement. Every soldier, noncommissioned officer (NCO), warrant officer, and officer has one primary mission -- to be trained and ready to fight and win our nation's wars. Success in battle does not happen by accident; it is a direct result of tough, realistic, and challenging training.

a.   Operational Environment

(1)   Commanders and leaders at all levels must conduct training with respect to a wide variety of operational missions across the full spectrum of operations; these operations may include combined arms, joint, multinational, and interagency considerations, and span the entire breadth of terrain and environmental possibilities. Commanders must strive to set the daily training conditions as closely as possible to those expected for actual operations.

(2)   The operational missions of the Army include not only war, but also military operations other than war (MOOTW). Operations may be conducted as major combat operations, a small-scale contingency, or a peacetime military engagement. Offensive and defensive operations normally dominate military operations in war along with some small-scale contingencies. Stability operations and support operations dominate in MOOTW. Commanders at all echelons may combine different types of operations simultaneously and sequentially to accomplish missions in war and MOOTW. These missions require training since future conflict will likely involve a mix of combat and MOOTW, often concurrently. The range of possible missions complicates training. Army forces cannot train for every possible mission; they train for war and prepare for specific missions as time and circumstances permit.

(3)   Our forces today use a train-alert-deploy sequence. We cannot count on the time or opportunity to correct or make up training deficiencies after deployment. Maintaining forces that are ready now, places increased emphasis on training and the priority of training. This concept is a key link between operational and training doctrine.

(4)   Units train to be ready for war based on the requirements of a precise and specific mission; in the process they develop a foundation of combat skills that can be refined based on the requirements of the assigned mission. Upon alert, commanders assess and refine from this foundation of skills. In the train-alert-deploy process, commanders use whatever time the alert cycle provides to continue refinement of mission-focused training. Training continues during time available between alert notification and deployment, between deployment and employment, and even during employment as units adapt to the specific battlefield environment and assimilate combat replacements.

b.   How the Army Trains the Army

(1)   Training is a team effort and the entire Army -- Department of the Army, major commands (MACOMs), the institutional training base, units, the combat training centers (CTCs), each individual soldier and the civilian workforce -- has a role that contributes to force readiness. Department of the Army and MACOMs are responsible for resourcing the Army to train. The Institutional Army, including schools, training centers, and NCO academies, for example, train soldiers and leaders to take their place in units in the Army by teaching the doctrine and tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTP). Units, leaders, and individuals are trained to standard on their assigned missions, first as an organic unit and then as an integrated component of a team. Operational deployments and major training opportunities, such as major training exercises, CTCs, and external evaluations (EXEVALs) provide rigorous, realistic, and stressful training and operational experience under actual or simulated combat and operational conditions to enhance unit readiness and produce bold, innovative leaders. The result of this Army-wide team effort is a training and leader development system that is unrivaled in the world. Effective training produces the force -- soldiers, leaders, and units -- that can successfully execute any assigned mission.

(2)   The Army Training and Leader Development Model (Figure 1-1) centers on developing trained and ready units led by competent and confident leaders. The model depicts an important dynamic that creates a lifelong learning process. The three core domains that shape the critical learning experiences throughout a soldiers and leaders time span are the operational, institutional, and self-development domains. Together, these domains interact by using feedback and assessment from various sources and methods to maximize warfighting readiness. Each domain has specific, measurable actions that must occur to develop our leaders.

The operational domain includes home station training, CTC rotations, and joint training exercises and deployments that satisfy

national objectives. Each of these actions provides foundational experiences for soldier, leader, and unit development.

The institutional domain focuses on educating and training soldiers and leaders on the key knowledge, skills and attributes required to operate in any environment. It includes individual, unit and joint schools, and advanced education.

The self-development domain, both structured and informal, focuses on taking those actions necessary to reduce or eliminate the gap between operational and institutional experiences.

   (3) Throughout this lifelong learning and experience process, there is formal and informal assessment and feedback of performance to prepare leaders for their next level of responsibility. Assessment is the method used to determine the proficiency and potential of leaders against a known standard. Feedback must be clear, formative guidance directly related to the outcome of training events measured against standards.
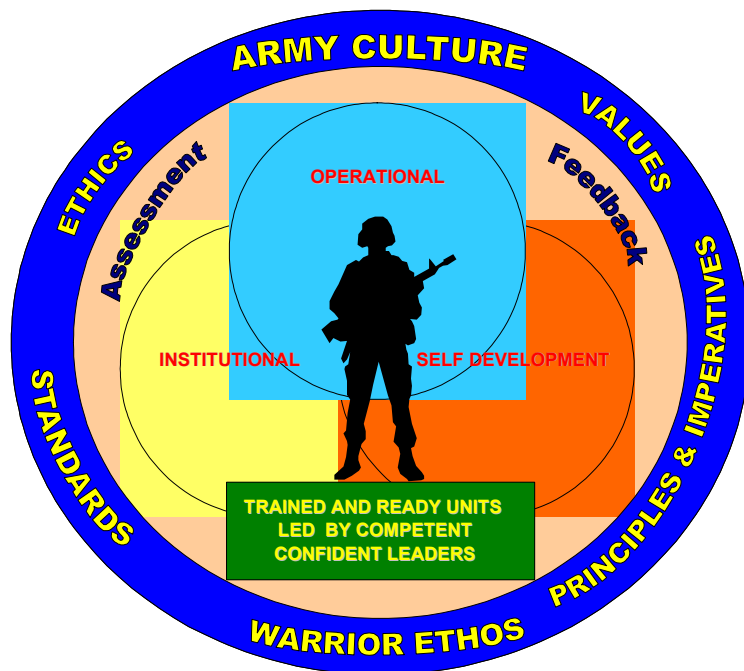

Figure 1-1. Army Training and Leader Development Model

c.   Leader Training and Leader Development

(1)   Competent and confident leaders are a prerequisite to the successful training of ready units. It is important to understand that leader training and leader development are integral parts of unit readiness. Leaders are inherently soldiers first and should be technically and tactically proficient in basic soldier skills. They are also adaptive, capable of sensing their environment, adjusting the plan when appropriate, and properly applying the proficiency acquired through training.

(2)   Leader training is an expansion of these skills that qualifies them to lead other soldiers. As such, doctrine and principles of training require the same level of attention of senior commanders. Leader training occurs in the Institutional Army, the unit, the CTCs, and through self-development. Leader training is just one portion of leader development.

(3)   Leader development is the deliberate, continuous, sequential, and progressive process, grounded in Army values, that grows soldiers and civilians into competent and confident leaders capable of decisive action. Leader development is achieved through the life-long synthesis of the knowledge, skills, and experiences gained through institutional training and education, organizational training, operational experience, and self-development. Commanders play the key roll in leader development that ideally produces tactically and technically competent, confident, and adaptive leaders who act with boldness and initiative in dynamic, complex situations to execute mission-type orders achieving the commander's intent.

d.   Role of the Unit. Soldier and leader training and development continue in the unit. Using the institutional foundation, training in organizations and units focuses and hones individual and team skills and knowledge.

(1)   Commander Responsibility

(a)   The unit commander is responsible for the wartime readiness of all elements in the formation. The commander is, therefore, the primary trainer of the organization and is responsible for ensuring that all training is conducted in accordance with the unit's METL to the Army standard.

(b)   Commanders ensure MTP standards are met during all training. If a squad, platoon, or company fails to meet established standards for identified METL tasks, the unit must retrain until the tasks are performed to standard. Training to standard on METL tasks is more important than completion of an event such as an EXEVAL. The objective is to focus on sustaining METL proficiency -- this is the critical factor commanders must adhere to when training small units.

(2)   NCO Responsibility. A great strength of the US Army is its professional NCO Corps who takes pride in being responsible for the individual training of soldiers, crews, and small teams.   The NCO support channel parallels and

complements the chain of command. It is a channel of communication and supervision from the Command Sergeant Major (CSM) to the First Sergeants (1SGs) and then to other NCOs and enlisted personnel. NCOs train soldiers to the non-negotiable standards published in MTPs and STPs. Commanders delegate authority to NCOs in the support channel as the primary trainers of individual, crew, and small team training. Commanders hold NCOs responsible for conducting standards-based, performance-oriented, battle-focused training and providing feedback on individual, crew, and team proficiency. Commanders define responsibilities and authority of their NCOs to their staffs and subordinates.

(3) Unit Responsibility. Unit training consists of three components. Collective training that is derived directly from METL and MTPs. Leader development that is embedded in the collective training tasks and in discrete individual leader focused training. And finally, individual training that establishes, improves, and sustains individual soldier proficiency in tasks directly related to the unit METL. Commanders conduct unit training to prepare soldiers and leaders for unit missions. All units concentrate on improving and sustaining unit task proficiency.

(4) Relationship between Institution and Unit. Institutions provide foundational training and education, and when combined with individual unit experience, provide soldiers and leaders what they need to succeed in each subsequent level of service throughout their careers, appropriate to new and increasing levels of responsibility. Unit commanders, through subordinate leaders, build on the foundation provided by Army schools to continue developing the skills and knowledge required for mission success, as articulated in the unit's METL. Unit commanders are responsible for sustaining small unit leader and individual soldier skills to support the unit's mission. Institutions are responsible to stay abreast of requirements and developments in the field to ensure the foundations they set prepare soldiers for duty in their units.

e. Reserve Component Training. The Army consists of the active component (AC) and the Reserve Component (RC). The AC is a federal force of full time soldiers and Department of the Army civilians. The RC consists of the Army National Guard (ARNG) and the United States Army Reserve (USAR). Each component is established under different statues and has unique and discrete characteristics, but all share the same doctrine and training process, and train to the same standard. Availability of training support system capabilities, however, does vary between components. All train to the same standard; however, the RC trains at lower echelons. The number of tasks trained will usually differ as a result of the training time available, and the conditions may vary based on the RC unique environment.

1-5. Missions and Tasks

a. Specified and Implied Missions. This MTP contains specified missions found in the TOE and implied missions that this unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical wartime mission, <u>Direct Petroleum and</u>

<u>Water Operations in assigned areas</u>, is the focus for this unit. The commander may supplement these missions with others, as required. The following is a list of missions for this unit:

      63-6-E0001   Supervise Group Level Deployment

      63-6-E0003   Supervise Group Level Relocation

      63-6-E0004   Supervise Group Level Area Establishment

  ☐ 10-6-0011   Plan Petroleum and Water Support Operations

      10-6-0013   Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations

      63-6-E0007   Coordinate Group Level Force Protection

      63-6-E0008   Supervise Group Level Redeployment

      (1)   Each of these tasks may be trained separately or concurrently with other tasks during collective training exercises and evaluations. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as a STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop a FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

      (2)   Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

      (3)   Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STP and Officer Foundation System (OFS) training, battle simulations, and execution of the unit's missions.

      (4)   Individual tasks that support collective tasks are mastered by training to standards listed in the appropriate STP.

    b.   Commanders and Training. Effective training is the number one priority of commanders. The commander is the primary trainer and responsible for the wartime readiness of their formation. In wartime, training continues with a priority second only to combat or to the support of combat operations. Commanders must extract the greatest training value from every training opportunity. Effective training requires the commander's continuous personal time and energy to accomplish the following:

      (1)   Develop and communicate a clear vision. The commander's training vision provides the direction, purpose, and motivation necessary to prepare

individuals and organizations to win in battle. It is based on a comprehensive understanding of the following:

> Mission, doctrine, and history
> Enemy/threat capabilities
> Operational environment
> Organizational and personnel strengths and weaknesses
> Training environment

(2)   Train one echelon below and evaluate two echelons below. Commanders are responsible for training their own unit and one echelon below. Commanders evaluate units two echelons below. For example, brigade commanders train battalions and evaluate companies; battalion commanders train companies and evaluate platoons.

(3)   Require subordinates to understand and perform their roles in training. Since good training results from leader involvement, one of the commander's principal roles in training is to teach subordinate trainers how to train and how to fight. The commander provides the continuing leadership that focuses on the organization's wartime mission. The commander assigns officers the primary responsibility for collective training and NCOs the primary responsibility for individual, crew, and small team training. The commander, as the primary trainer, uses multi-echelon techniques to meld leader, battle staff, and individual training requirements into collective training events, while recognizing the overlap in training responsibilities. Commanders teach, coach, and mentor subordinates throughout.

(4)   Train all elements to be proficient on their mission essential tasks. Commanders must integrate and train to Army standard all battlefields operating systems (BOS), within and supporting their command, on their selected mission essential tasks. An important requirement for all leaders is to project training plans far enough into the future and to coordinate resources with sufficient lead-time.

(5)   Develop subordinates. Competent and confident leaders build cohesive organizations with a strong chain of command, high morale, and good discipline. Therefore, commanders create leader development programs that develop warfighter professionalism -- skills and knowledge. They develop their subordinates' confidence and empower them to make independent, situational-based decisions on the battlefield.

(6)   Involve themselves personally in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing training. The commander resources training and protects subordinate commanders' training time. They are actively involved in planning for future training. They create a sense of stability throughout the organization by protecting approved training plans from training distracters. Commanders protect the time of subordinate commanders allowing them to be present at training as much as possible. Subordinate commanders are responsible for executing the approved training to standard.

Commanders are present during the conduct of training as much as possible and provide experienced feedback to all participants.

(7)   Demand training standards are achieved. Leaders anticipate that some tasks will not be performed to standard. Therefore, they design time into training events to allow additional training on tasks not performed to standard. It is more important to train to standard on a limited number of critical tasks, rather than attempting and failing to achieve the standard on too many tasks, rationalizing that corrective action will occur during some later training period. Soldiers will remember the enforced standard, not the one that was discussed.

(8)   Ensure proper task and event discipline. Senior leaders ensure junior leaders plan the correct task-to-time ratio. Too many tasks guarantee nothing will get trained to standard and no time is allocated for retraining. Too many events result in improper preparation and recovery.

(9)   Foster a command climate that is conducive to good training. Commanders create a climate that rewards subordinates who are bold and innovative trainers. They challenge the organization and each individual to train to full potential. Patience and coaching are essential ingredients to ultimate achievement of the Army standard.

(10)   Eliminate training distractions. The commander who has planned and resourced a training event is responsible to ensure participation by the maximum number of soldiers. Administrative support burdens cannot be ignored; however, they can be managed using an effective time management system. Senior commanders must support subordinate commanders' efforts to train effectively by eliminating training distracters and reinforcing the requirement for all assigned personnel to be present during training.

c.   Top-down/Bottom-up Approach to Training

(1)   The top-down/bottom-up approach to training is a team effort in which senior leaders provide training focus, direction and resources, and junior leaders provide feedback on unit training proficiency, identify specific unit training needs, and execute training to standard in accordance with the approved plan. It is a team effort that maintains training focus, establishes training priorities, and enables effective communication between command echelons.

(2)   Guidance, based on wartime mission and priorities, flows from the top-down and results in subordinate units' identification of specific collective and individual tasks that support the higher unit's mission. Input from the bottom up is essential because it identifies training needs to achieve task proficiency on identified collective and individual tasks. Leaders at all echelons communicate with each other about requirements, and planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training.

(3)   Senior leaders centralize planning to provide a consistent training focus from the top to the bottom of the organization. However, they decentralize execution to ensure that the conduct of mission related training sustains strengths and overcomes the weaknesses unique to each unit. Decentralized execution promotes subordinate leaders' initiative to train their units, but does not mean senior leaders give up their responsibilities to supervise training, develop leaders, and provide feedback.

     d.   Battle Focus

     (1)   Battle focus is a concept used to derive peacetime training requirements from assigned and anticipated missions. The priority of training in units is to train to standard on the wartime mission. Battle focus guides the planning, preparation, execution, and assessment of each organization's training program to ensure its members train as they are going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process and is used by commanders to allocate resources for training based on wartime and operational mission requirements. Battle focus enables commanders and staffs at all echelons to structure a training program that copes with non-mission-related requirements while focusing on mission essential training activities. It is recognized that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task whether due to time or other resource constraints. However, commanders can achieve a successful training program by consciously focusing on a reduced number of critical tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment.

     (2)   A critical aspect of the battle focus concept is to understand the responsibility for and the linkage between the collective mission essential tasks and the individual tasks that support them.   The commander and the CSM must jointly coordinate the collective mission essential tasks and individual training tasks on which the unit will concentrate its efforts during a given period.   The CSM must select the specific individual tasks that support each collective task to be trained. Although NCOs have the primary role in training and sustaining individual soldier skills, officers at every echelon remain responsible for training to established standards during both individual and collective training. Battle focus is applied to all missions across the full spectrum of operations.

     e.   Battle Focus Training Management.   The foundation of the training process is the Army Training Management Cycle. In the METL development process, training must be related to the organization's operational wartime mission and focus on METL tasks. Leaders develop the long-range, short-range, and near-term training plans to train for proficiency on METL tasks. After training plans are developed, units execute training by preparing, conducting, and recovering from training. The process continues with training evaluations that provide bottom-up input to organizational assessments. Organizational assessments provide necessary feedback to the senior commander that assist in preparing the training assessment.

1-6.   METL-Linked Training Strategy.   METL provides the foundation for the organization's training plans. The following fundamentals apply to METL development:

The METL is derived from the organization's wartime plans and related tasks in external guidance

Mission essential tasks must apply to the entire organization; METL does not include tasks assigned solely to subordinate organizations

Each organization's METL must support and complement the METL of higher headquarters

The availability of resources does not affect METL development; the METL is an unconstrained statement of the tasks required to accomplish wartime missions

Commanders direct operations and integrate the BOS through plans and orders

a.   METL-based Training.   The METL is stabilized once approved.   The commander is responsible for developing a training strategy that will maintain unit proficiency for all tasks designated as mission essential.   Commanders involve subordinate commanders and their CSM in METL development to create a team approach to battle-focused training.   Subordinate participation develops a common understanding of the organization's critical wartime requirements so that METLs throughout the organization are mutually supporting.   Subordinate commanders can subsequently apply insights gained during preparation of the next higher headquarters' METL to the development of their own METL.   The CSM and key NCOs must understand the organization's collective METL so that they can integrate individual tasks into each collective mission essential task during METL-based training.

b.   Battle Tasks.   After review and approval of subordinate organizations' METL, the senior commander selects battle tasks.   A battle task is a staff or subordinate organization mission essential task that is so critical that its accomplishment will determine the success of the next higher organization's mission essential task.   Battle tasks are selected for each METL task.   Battle tasks allow the next higher commander to define the training tasks that --

Integrate the BOS

Receive the highest priority for resources, such as ammunition, training areas and facilities (to include live and virtual simulators and constructive simulations), materiel, and funds

Receive emphasis during evaluations directed by senior headquarters

1-7.   Planning Process. Planning is an extension of the battle-focused concept that links organizational METL with the subsequent preparation, execution, and evaluation of training. A relatively centralized process, planning develops mutually supporting METL-based training at all echelons within an organization. The planning process ensures continuous coordination from long-range planning, through short-range and near-term planning, and ultimately leads to training execution. The commander's assessment provides direction and focus to the planning process used to develop battle-focused training programs.

a.   The commander applies two principal inputs at the start of the planning process -the METL and the training assessment. Commanders identify tasks that support the METL. The training assessment compares the organization's current level of training proficiency with the desired level of warfighting proficiency.

b.   The commander uses the broad experience and knowledge of key subordinates to help determine the organization's current proficiency. Although subordinates provide their evaluation as input for consideration, only the commander can assess the unit's training proficiency. For example, a division commander may direct that the assistant division commanders, key staff members, and subordinate commanders evaluate the training proficiency of the division's ability to execute mission essential tasks and supporting battle tasks. The division CSM and subordinate CSMs evaluate proficiency on individual tasks that support collective tasks. The participants review available collective and individual evaluation information, relying heavily on personal observations. They then compare the organization's current task proficiency with the Army standard. The commander uses subordinate input in making the final determination of the organization's current proficiency on each task.

1-8.   Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the ten training principles as found in FM 7-0, Training the Force, and as stated below:

>   Commanders are responsible for training
>   NCOs Train Individuals, Crews, and Small Teams
>   Train as a Combined Arms and Joint Team
>   Train for Combat Proficiency
>   Realistic Conditions
>   Performance Oriented
>   Train to Standard Using Appropriate Doctrine
>   Train to Adapt
>   Train to Maintain and Sustain
>   Train Using Multi-echelon Techniques
>   Train to Sustain Proficiency
>   Train and Develop Leaders

a.   Commanders Are Responsible for Training

(1)   Commanders are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization, are actively engaged in the training process, and adhere to the principles of training. To accomplish their training responsibility, commanders must --

>   Be present at training to maximum extent possible
>   Base training on mission requirements
>   Train to applicable Army standards
>   Assess current levels of proficiency
>   Provide the required resources

Develop and execute training plans that result in proficient
individuals, leaders, and units

(2)   Commanders delegate authority to NCOs in the chain of command as the primary trainers of individual, crew, and small teams. Commanders hold NCOs responsible for conducting standards-based, performance-oriented, battle-focused training and provide feedback on individual, crew, and team proficiency.

b.   NCOs Train Individuals, Crews, and Small Teams. NCOs continue the soldierization process of newly assigned enlisted soldiers, and begin their professional development. NCOs are responsible for conducting standards-based, performance-oriented, battle-focused training. They identify specific individual, crew, and small team tasks that support the unit's collective mission essential tasks; plan, prepare, rehearse, and execute training; and evaluate training and conduct after action reviews (AARs) to provide feedback to the commander on individual, crew, and small team proficiency. Senior NCOs coach junior NCOs to master a wide range of individual tasks.

c.   Train as a Combined Arms and Joint Team. The Army provides a Joint Force Commander (JFC) with trained and ready forces that expand the command's range of military options in full spectrum operations. Army commanders tailor and train forces to react quickly to any crisis. Army forces provide a JFC the capability to --

Seize areas previously denied by the enemy
Dominate land operations
Provide support to civil authorities

(1)   Joint training uses joint doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures. Service sponsored interoperability training occurs when two or more services train together using their respective service doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures. Although, not classified as joint training, Service sponsored interoperability is a vital component of joint proficiency and readiness.

(2)   Army forces seldom operate unilaterally. Joint interdependence from the individual, crew, and small team to the operational level requires training to develop experienced, adaptive leaders, soldiers, and organizations prepared to operate with joint and multinational forces and to provide interagency unity of effort.

(3)   The commander's training plan must achieve combined arms proficiency and ensure functional training proficiency of the combat arms, combat support, and combat service support units of the task force. Combined arms proficiency requires effective integration of BOS functions. The commander's training plan must integrate combined arms and functional training events.

(4)   Combined arms training is standards based. The independent training of functional tasks and combined arms tasks to standard will not guarantee the desired effects of applying combat power at a decisive place and time. The standard for effective combined arms training requires a sequenced and continuous execution of

functional tasks and combined arms tasks to standard in order to achieve "…integrated relative combat power at a decisive place and time."

d.   Train for Combat Proficiency. The goal of all training is to achieve the standard. This develops and sustains combat capable warfighting organizations. To achieve this, units must train to standard under realistic conditions. Achieving standards requires hard work by commanders, staff officers, unit leaders, and soldiers. Within the confines of safety and common sense, commanders and leaders must be willing to accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training.

(1)   Realistic Conditions. Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. Realistic training builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills, and inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn. Successful completion of each training phase increases the capability and motivation of individuals and units for more sophisticated and challenging achievement. This is the commanders' continuous quest.

(2)   Performance Oriented. Units become proficient in the performance of critical tasks and missions by practicing the tasks and missions. Soldiers learn best by doing, using an experiential, hands-on approach. Commanders and subordinate leaders are responsible to plan training that will provide these opportunities. All training assets and resources, to include training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations (TADSS), must be included in the unit's training strategy.

e.   Train to Standard Using Appropriate Doctrine. Training must be done to the Army standard and conform to Army doctrine. In cases where mission tasks involve emerging doctrine or non-standard tasks, commanders establish the tasks, conditions and standards using mission orders and guidance, lessons learned from similar operations, and their professional judgment. The next higher commander approves the creation of the standards for these tasks. FM 3-0, Operations, provides the doctrinal foundation, and supporting doctrinal manuals describe common TTP that permit commanders and organizations to adjust rapidly to changing situations. Doctrine provides a basis for a common vocabulary across the force. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn non-standard procedures. Therefore, units must train to the Army standard contained in the MTP and soldier training publications, while applying Army doctrine and current regulatory guidance.

f.   Train to Adapt. Commanders train and develop adaptive leaders and units, and prepare their subordinates to operate in positions of increased responsibility. Repetitive, standards-based training provides relevant experience. Commanders intensify training experiences by varying training conditions. Training experiences coupled with timely feedback builds competence. Leaders build unit, staff and soldier confidence when they consistently demonstrate competence. Competence, confidence, and discipline promote initiative and enable leaders to adapt to changing situations and conditions. They improvise with the resources at hand, exploit opportunities and

accomplish their assigned mission in the absence of orders. Commanders, at every echelon, integrate training events in their training plans to develop and train imaginative, adaptive leaders and units.

g.   Train to Maintain and Sustain. Soldier and equipment maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment and supplies in a high state of readiness to support training or operational missions. Units must be capable of fighting for sustained periods of time with the equipment they are issued. Soldiers must become experts in both the operation and maintenance of their equipment. This link between training and sustainment is vital to mission success.

h.   Train Using Multi-echelon Techniques. Multi-echelon training is the most effective and efficient way of sustaining proficiency on mission essential tasks with limited time and resources. Commanders use multi-echelon training to --

Train leaders, battle staffs, units, and individuals at each echelon of the organization simultaneously
Maximize use of allocated resources and available time
Reduce the effects of personnel turbulence

i.   Train to Sustain Proficiency

(1)   Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure individual and collective training plans to retrain critical tasks at the minimum frequency necessary to sustain proficiency. Sustainment training is the key to maintaining unit proficiency through personnel turbulence and operational deployments. MTP and individual training plans are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency. Sustainment training must occur often enough to train new soldiers and minimize skill decay. Army units train to accomplish their missions by frequent sustainment training on critical tasks. Infrequent "peaking" of training for an event (CTC rotation, for example) does not sustain wartime proficiency. Battle-focused training is training on wartime tasks. Many of the METL tasks that a unit trains on for its wartime mission are the same as required for a stability operation or support operation that they might execute.

(2)   Sustainment training enables units to operate in a Band of Excellence (Figure 1-2) through appropriate repetition of critical tasks. The Band of Excellence is the range of proficiency within which a unit is capable of executing its wartime METL tasks. For RC units the Band of Excellence is the range of proficiency within which a unit is capable of executing its pre-mobilization tasks. Training to sustain proficiency in the Band of Excellence includes training of leaders, battle staffs, and small lethal units. The solid black line shows the results of an effective unit training strategy that sustains training proficiency over time, maintaining it within the Band of Excellence. The dotted black line shows an ineffective training strategy that often causes the unit to fall outside the Band of Excellence, thus requiring significant

additional training before the unit is capable of executing its wartime METL tasks. Personnel turbulence and availability of resources pose a continuous challenge to maintaining METL proficiency within the Band of Excellence.

Figure 1-2. Band of Excellence

j.   Train and Develop Leaders. Commanders have a duty and execute a vital role in leader training and leader development. They teach subordinates how to fight and how to train. They mentor, guide, listen to, and "think with" subordinates. They train leaders to plan training in detail, prepare for training thoroughly, execute training aggressively, and evaluate short-term training proficiency in terms of desired long-term results. Training and developing leaders is an embedded component of every training event. Nothing is more important to the Army than building confident, competent, adaptive leaders for tomorrow.

1-9.   Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions is a component of the Army's Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS) as discussed in TRADOC Regulation 350-70. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and training resources required to train to standard.

a.   The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to

standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b.   This unit's training strategy contained in Appendix A of this MTP is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training (the battalion) to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies provided in the MTP provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c.   This unit's training strategy is comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of this unit's training strategy are:

(1)   Maneuver and Collective Training Strategy.   The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depict those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2)   Gunnery Strategy. The gunnery strategy is built around weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or appropriate field manual publications.

(3)   Soldier Strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d.   A critical element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl-walk-run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting a FTX, and a STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard prior to conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of his soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the unit's METL, and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status, will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e.   When developing the unit's training plan, the commander will identify the training tasks from the MTP required to train his METL. CATS are found in Appendix A of company and higher echelon MTPs.

1-10. Executing Training. This MTP is designed to facilitate the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in the FM 7-0, Training the Force.

a. The commander will assign the missions and tasks for training based on his METL and the training guidance from the next higher headquarters. Trainers must plan and execute training in support of this guidance.

b. The commander will review the mission outlines in Chapter 3 to determine whether the FTXs and STXs provided will support or can be modified to support your commander's guidance. If they do not support the guidance or need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a listing of all collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. The commander will prioritize the tasks that need training. Time is seldom available to train everything. The commander must orient on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. The commander will integrate training tasks into the training schedule. Use the following procedures to do this:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multi-echelon training for the best results.
(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. The commander must approve the list of tasks to be trained and schedule them on the unit-training schedule.

f. The commander must determine the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. The commander must keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

h. Training Execution. All good training, regardless of the specific collective, leader, and individual tasks being executed, must comply with certain common requirements. These include adequate preparation, effective presentation and practice, and thorough evaluation. (Evaluation is discussed in Paragraph 1-13a, below.) The

execution of training includes preparation for training, conduct of training, and recovery from training.

(1)   Preparation for Training. Formal near-term planning for training culminates with the publication of the unit-training schedule. Informal planning, detailed coordination, and preparation for executing the training continue until the training is performed. Commanders and other trainers use training meetings to assign responsibility for preparation of all scheduled training. Preparation for training includes selecting tasks to be trained, planning the conduct of the training, training the trainers, reconnaissance of the site, issuing the training execution plan, and conducting rehearsals and pre-execution checks. Pre-execution checks are preliminary actions commanders and trainers use to identify responsibility for these and other training support tasks. They are used to monitor preparation activities and to follow up to ensure planned training is conducted to standard. Pre-execution checks are a critical portion of any training meeting. During preparation for training, battalion and company commanders identify and eliminate potential training distracters that develop within their own organizations. They also stress personnel accountability to ensure maximum attendance at training.

(a)   Subordinate leaders, as a result of the bottom-up feed from internal training meetings, identify and select the collective, leader, and individual tasks necessary to support the identified training objectives. Commanders develop the tentative plan to include requirements for preparatory training, concurrent training, and training resources. At a minimum, the training plan should include confirmation of training areas and locations, training ammunition allocations, training simulations and simulators availability, transportation requirements, soldier support items, a risk management analysis, assignment of responsibility for the training, designation of trainers responsible for approved training, and final coordination. The time and other necessary resources for retraining must also be an integral part of the original training plan.

(b)   Leaders, trainers, evaluators, observer/controllers, and OPFOR are identified, trained to standard, and rehearsed prior to the conduct of the training. Leaders and trainers are coached on how to train, given time to prepare, and rehearsed so that training will be challenging and doctrinally correct. Commanders ensure that trainers and evaluators are not only tactically and technically competent on their training tasks, but also understand how the training relates to the organization's METL. Properly prepared trainers, evaluators, and leaders project confidence and enthusiasm to those being trained. Trainer and leader training is a critical event in the preparation phase of training. These individuals must demonstrate proficiency on the selected tasks prior to the conduct of training.

(c)   Commanders, with their subordinate leaders and trainers, conduct site reconnaissance, identify additional training support requirements, and refine and issue the training execution plan. The training plan should identify all those elements necessary to ensure the conduct of training to standard. Rehearsals are essential to the execution of good training. Realistic, standards-based, performance-

oriented training requires rehearsals for trainers, support personnel, evaluators, observer/controllers and OPFOR. Preparing for training in RC organizations can require complex pre-execution checks. RC trainers must often conduct detailed coordination to obtain equipment, training support system products and ammunition from distant locations. In addition, RC pre-execution checks may be required to coordinate AC assistance from the numbered CONUSA, training support divisions, and directed training affiliations.

(2) Conduct of Training. Ideally, training is executed using the crawl-walk-run approach. This allows and promotes an objective, standards-based approach to training. Training starts at the basic level. Crawl events are relatively simple to conduct and require minimum support from the unit. After the crawl stage, training becomes incrementally more difficult, requiring more resources from the unit and home station, and increasing the level of realism. At the run stage, the level of difficulty for the training event intensifies. Run stage training requires optimum resources and ideally approaches the level of realism expected in combat. Progression from the walk to the run stage for a particular task may occur during a one-day training exercise or may require a succession of training periods over time. Achievement of the Army standard determines progression between stages.

(a) In crawl-walk-run training, the tasks and the standards remain the same; however, the conditions under which they are trained change. Commanders may change the conditions, for example, by increasing the difficulty of the conditions under which the task is being performed, increasing the tempo of the task training, increasing the number of tasks being trained, or by increasing the number of personnel involved in the training. Whichever approach is used, it is important that all leaders and soldiers involved understand in which stage they are currently training and understand the Army standard.

(b) An example of the crawl-walk-run approach occurs in the execution of a platoon executing a STX. In the crawl stage, the platoon conducts a dismounted rehearsal of the task. In the walk stage, the platoon conducts a full rehearsal of the task. In the run stage, the platoon executes several iterations of the task against an OPFOR. Some iterations are conducted under nuclear, biological and chemical conditions, and some during periods of limited visibility. During each iteration of the task, the platoon strives to achieve the tactical objective to the standard described in the T&EO.

(c) An AAR is immediately conducted and may result in the need for additional training. Any task that was not conducted to standard should be retrained. Retraining should be conducted at the earliest opportunity. Commanders should program time and other resources for retraining as an integral part of their training plan. Training is incomplete until the task is trained to standard. Soldiers will remember the standard enforced, not the one discussed.

(3)   Recovery from Training. The recovery process is an extension of training, and once completed, it signifies the end of the training event. At a minimum, recovery includes conduct of maintenance training, turn-in of training support items, and the conduct of AARs that review the overall effectiveness of the training just completed.

(a)   Maintenance training is the conduct of post-operations preventive maintenance checks and services, accountability of organizational and individual equipment, and final inspections. Class IV, Class V, TADSS and other support items are maintained, accounted for, and turned-in and training sites and facilities are closed out.

(b)   AARs conducted during recovery focus on collective, leader, and individual task performance, and on the planning, preparation and conduct of the training just completed. Unit AARs focus on individual and collective task performance, and identify shortcomings and the training required to correct deficiencies. AARs with leaders focus on tactical judgment. These AARs contribute to leader learning and provide opportunities for leader development. AARs with trainers, evaluators, observer/controllers, and OPFOR provide additional opportunities for leader development.

1-11. Force Protection (Safety)

a.   Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes commander's review of operational safety and leads to decision-making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units' project combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness, which determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are:

(1)   Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2)   Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3)   Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4)   Standards and procedures for task preference that is clear and practical.

(5)   Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities and services.

b.   Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c.   Incorporate risk management into all training plans and supporting training events. The nature of our profession is inherently dangerous. Commanders must train their units to tough standards under the most realistic conditions possible. Application of the risk management process will not detract from this training goal, but will enhance execution of highly effective, realistic training. Risk management is the process of identifying, assessing, and controlling risks arising from operational factors and making decisions that balance risk costs with mission training benefits. Leaders and soldiers at all echelons use risk management to conserve combat power and resources. Leaders and staffs continuously identify hazards and assess both accident and tactical risks. They then develop and coordinate control measures to mitigate or eliminate hazards. Risk management is a continuous process for each mission or training event. It must be integral to military decisions, tied into each training plan, and become a continuous part of preparation for training.

d.   Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing and evaluating training. The chain of command responsibilities include:

(1)   Commanders

Seek optimum, not adequate, performance
Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission
Select risk reductions provided by staff
Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived
Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts

(2)   Staff

Assists the commander in assessing risks and develops risk reduction options for training
Integrates risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards and performance measures
Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness
Assesses safety performance during training
Evaluates safety performance during AARs

(3)   Subordinate Leaders

Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations they lead

Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors

(4)   Individual Soldiers

Report unsafe conditions and act to correct the situation when possible
Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another
Take responsibility for personal safety
Work as a team member
Modify own risk behavior

e.   Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 5-0, Army Planning Orders Production. The five steps are:

(1)   Identify Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.

(2)   Assess Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probably effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Rick Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-3) is a tool for assessing hazards.

			FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
		HAZARD PROBABILITY					
			A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**
E F F E C T	CATASTROPHIC	**I**	EXTREMELY HIGH		HIGH		
	CRITICAL	**II**					LOW
	MARGINAL	**III**		MEDIUM			
	NEGLIGIBLE	**IV**					

Effect

Catastrophic: Death or permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage.

Critical: Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage

Marginal: Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system damage, minor property damage

Negligible: First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment

Probability

Frequent: Individual soldier/item.......................................Occurs often in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory..............Continuously experienced.

Probable: Individual soldier/item.......................................Occurs several times in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory..............Occurs frequently.

Occasional: Individual soldier/item.......................................Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory..............Occurs sporadically, or several times in inventory service life..

Remote: Individual soldier/item.......................................Possible to occur in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory..............Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.

Improbable: Individual soldier/item.......................................Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory..............Possible, but improbable; occurs only very rarely.

Risk Levels

Extremely High: Loss of ability to accomplish mission.
High: Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.
Medium: Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.
Low: Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.

Figure 1-3. Risk Assessment Matrix

(3) Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), operation orders (OPORDs), standing operating procedures (SOPs) and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow up and after action review. Develop the lessons learned.

f. Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management is the mechanism with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled.

g. The primary causes of fratricide are:

(1) Direct Fire Control Plan Failures. These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(2) Land Navigation Failures. This result when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) Combat Identification Failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate Control Measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) Reporting Communication Failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons Error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield Hazards. Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, family of scatterable mines (FASCAM), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

h. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

Loss of confidence in the unit leadership

Increasing self-doubt among leaders
Hesitation to use supporting combat systems
Over supervision of units
Hesitation to conduct night operations
Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver
Loss of initiative
Disrupted operations
General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power

1-12. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate, damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management, and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a.   Identify Hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available (METT-T) factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b.   Assess the Hazard. Analyze potential severity of environmental degradation using the Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-4). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrixes.

c.   Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d.   Brief Chain of Command: Brief the chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable), on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e.   Implement Controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards and rehearsals.

f.   Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

Environmental area					Rating:	
Unit Operations	**Risk Impact**					
Movement of heavy vehicle/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0

Environmental Risk Assessment Worksheet

	Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	Movement of personnel and light systems	Assembly area activities	Field maintenance of equipment	Garrison maintenance of equipment	Risk rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous materiel/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division Cmdr
Extremely High	150-175	Severe	MACOM Cmdr

Risk Categories

Figure 1-4. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

1-13. Assessment. Assessment is the commander's responsibility. It is the commander's judgment of the organization's ability to accomplish its wartime operational mission. Assessment is a continuous process that includes evaluating training, conducting an organizational assessment, and preparing a training assessment. The commander uses his experience, feedback from training evaluations, and other evaluations and reports to arrive at his assessment. Assessment is both the end and the beginning of the training management cycle. Training assessment is more than just training evaluation, and encompasses a wide variety of inputs. Assessments include such diverse systems as training, force integration, logistics, and personnel, and provide the link between the unit's performance and the Army standard. Evaluation of training is, however, a major component of assessment. Training evaluations provide

the commander with feedback on the demonstrated training proficiency of soldiers, leaders, battle staffs, and units. Commanders cannot personally observe all training in their organization and, therefore, gather feedback from their senior staff officers and NCOs.

a.   Types of Training Evaluations. Evaluations can be informal, formal, internal, external, or any combination thereof. (See Chapter 6, External Evaluation.)

(1)   Informal evaluations take place when a leader conducts training with his unit, for example, when a squad leader trains his squad to assault an objective. Another example would be whenever a leader visits ongoing training, for instance, when a battalion commander observes company training. This type of evaluation provides real-time feedback on the training environment and the proficiency resulting from training.

(2)   Formal evaluations are resourced with dedicated evaluators and are generally scheduled in the long-range or short-range training plans. Formal evaluations are normally highlighted during short-range training briefings. To the maximum extent possible, headquarters two echelons higher conduct formal external evaluations; i.e., division commanders evaluate battalions, brigade commanders evaluate companies, and battalion commanders evaluate platoons.

(3)   Internal evaluations are planned, resourced, and conducted by the organization undergoing the evaluation.

(4)   External evaluations are planned, resourced, and conducted by a headquarters at an echelon higher in the chain of command than the organization undergoing the evaluation or a headquarters outside the chain of command.

b.   Evaluation of Training. Training evaluations are a critical component of any training assessment. Evaluation measures the demonstrated ability of soldiers, commanders, leaders, battle staffs, and units against the Army standard. Evaluation of training is integral to standards-based training and is the cornerstone of leader training and leader development. The T&Eos in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

(1)   All training must be evaluated to measure performance levels against the established Army standard. The evaluation can be as fundamental as an informal, internal evaluation performed by the leader conducting the training. Evaluation is conducted specifically to enable the unit or individual undergoing the training to know whether the training standard has been achieved. Commanders must establish a climate that encourages candid and accurate feedback for the purpose of developing leaders and trained units.

(2)   Evaluation of training is not a test; it is not used to find reasons to punish leaders and soldiers. Evaluation tells the unit or the soldier whether or not they

achieved the Army standard and, therefore, assists them in determining the overall effectiveness of their training plans. Evaluation produces disciplined soldiers, leaders and units. Training without evaluation is a waste of time and resources.

(3)   Evaluations are used by leaders as an opportunity to coach and mentor subordinates. A key element in developing leaders is immediate, positive feedback that coaches and leads subordinate leaders to achieve the Army standard. This is a tested and proven path to develop competent, confident adaptive leaders.

(4)   A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard; then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly, and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c.   Evaluators. Commanders must plan for formal evaluation and must ensure the evaluators are trained. These evaluators must also be trained as facilitators to conduct AARs that elicit maximum participation from those being trained. External evaluators will be certified in the tasks they are evaluating and normally will not be dual-tasked as a participant in the training being executed.

d.   Role of Commanders and Leaders. Commanders ensure that evaluations take place at each echelon in the organization. Commanders use this feedback to teach, coach, and mentor their subordinates. They ensure that every training event is evaluated as part of training execution and that every trainer conducts evaluations. Commanders use evaluations to focus command attention by requiring evaluation of specific mission essential and battle tasks. They also take advantage of evaluation information to develop appropriate lessons learned for distribution throughout their commands.

(1)   The use of evaluation data can have a strong effect on the command climate of the organization. Therefore, senior commanders make on-the-spot corrections, underwrite honest mistakes, and create an environment for aggressive action to correct training deficiencies, through retraining. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. During the exercises, plan AARs at frequent and logical intervals; (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that will allow correcting performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevent reinforcement of bad habits.

(2)   Commanders use training evaluations as one component of a feedback system. To keep the training system dynamic, they use feedback to determine the effectiveness of the planning, execution, and assessment portions of the

training management cycle. These feedback systems allow the commander to make changes that lead to superior training results and to teach, coach and mentor subordinate leaders. To be effective, this feedback flows between senior and subordinate headquarters, within each command echelon, and among a network of trainers that may cross several command lines.

    e.   After Action Review. The AAR, whether formal or informal, provides feedback for all training. It is a structured review process that allows participating soldiers, leaders, and units to discover for them what happened during the training, why it happened, and how it can be done better. The AAR is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. Take-home packages are an excellent source of feedback to include in a unit assessment. These packages consist of videotapes and written documentation of AARs, a report of unit strengths and weaknesses as noted by the observer/controllers, and recommendations for future home station training.

1-14. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. There is a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations and comments.

Chapter 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training Matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel.

2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate   BOS which are indicated by an **X** in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table

Mission Title

A - Plan Petroleum and Water Support Operations
(**10-6-0011**)
B - Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations
(**10-6-0013**)
C - Supervise Group-Level Deployment
(**63-6-E0001**)
D - Coordinate Group Level Force Protection
(**63-6-E0007**)
E - Supervise Group Level Redeployment
(**63-6-E0008**)
F - Supervise Group Level Relocation
(**63-6-E0003**)
G - Supervise Group Level Area Establishment
(**63-6-E0004**)

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table.

Collective Tasks	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver							
63-6-4014 Supervise Advance/ Quartering Party Activities						X	
63-6-4015 Establish Command Post (Forward)							X
63-6-4017 Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements						X	
63-6-4018 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters							X
63-6-4019 Establish the Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas							X
63-6-4850 Direct Deployment Alert Activities			X				
63-6-4851 Establish the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)			X				
63-6-4852 Operate the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)			X				
63-6-4853 Supervise Deployment/Re deployment Activities			X		X		

Collective Tasks	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
63-6-4854 Update Movement Plan/Order			X		X		
63-6-4855 Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support			X				
63-6-4856 Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support			X				
63-6-4857 Coordinate Family Assistance Support			X				
63-6-4858 Coordinate Deployment Training Support			X				
63-6-4859 Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions			X				
63-6-4860 Provide Deployment Logistics Support			X				
63-6-4861 Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities			X				
63-6-4862 Coordinate Onward Movement			X				

Collective Tasks	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
63-6-4863 Coordinate Rear Detachment Support			X				
63-6-4864 Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities			X				
63-6-4865 Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment					X		
63-6-4866 Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order					X		
63-6-4867 Provide Redeployment Support					X		
63-6-4868 Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities					X		
63-6-4869 Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities					X		
63-6-4870 Coordinate Home Station Activities					X		
63-6-4871 Direct Integration Activities			X				
63-6-4872 Plan Command Deployment in a Peacetime Environment			X				
Protect the Force							
63-6-4011 Plan Area Tactical Operations	X			X			

Collective Tasks	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
63-6-4013 Plan Base Cluster Operations	X			X			
63-6-4035 Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center		X		X		X	X
63-6-4036 Supervise Operations Security Program		X		X		X	X
63-6-4037 Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations				X		X	X
63-6-4047 Operate Rear Tactical Operations Center				X			
63-6-4049 Direct Response to Threat Actions				X			
Perform CSS and Sustainment							
10-6-0200 Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates	X						
10-6-0201 Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations	X						
10-6-0202 Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations		X					

Collective Tasks	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
10-6-0203 Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs		X					
10-6-0206 Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities		X					
10-6-4061 Establish Liaison	x	x					
10-6-4062 Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support		X					
63-6-4020 Operate the Logistics Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center		X					
63-6-4021 Supervise Support Operations Sub-elements Functions							X
63-6-4022 Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP)	X						
63-6-4023 Coordinate Internal Logistics		X		X		X	X
63-6-4029 Coordinate Combat Health Support		X					
63-6-4030 Coordinate Transportation Support						X	
63-6-4032 Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination		X					

Collective Tasks	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
63-6-4041 Conduct Command Religious Support Program		X		X			
63-6-4043 Provide Automation Support		X					
63-6-4050 Direct Area Damage Control Operations		X		X			
63-6-4326 Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Exercise Command and Control							
63-6-4000 Receive the Mission	X						
63-6-4001 Conduct Mission Analysis	X						
63-6-4002 Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques	X						
63-6-4003 Develop Feasible Courses of Action	X						
63-6-4004 Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation	X						
63-6-4005 Analyze Feasible Courses of Action	X						

Collective Tasks	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
63-6-4006 Prepare Operations Plan/Order	X						
63-6-4007 Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays	X						
63-6-4009 Develop Road Movement Order	X					X	
63-6-4010 Develop Occupation Plan	X					X	
63-6-4016 Establish Communica-tions							X
63-6-4038 Maintain Communica-tions				X		X	X
63-6-4042 Provide Command and Control		X	X	X		X	X
63-6-4303 Combat Battlefield Stress		X		X	X	X	X
63-6-4873 Plan Command Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order			X				
63-6-4874 Plan Command Redeployment					X		

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions.

Chapter 3

Training Plans

3-1. General. This chapter describes the use of MTP(s) for development of the Petroleum Group training plans and provides a mission outline. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for critical missions. FM 7-0 provides detailed information on training management and should be used with the MTP for developing Petroleum Group training plans.

3-2. Long-Range Planning. Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to the Army's various training resource systems and provide a general direction for the training programs. The long-range plan consists of a calendar covering the period and the commander's formal guidance. To develop a long-range plan, the commander must first develop the unit's METL and conduct a training assessment. These two actions are the two principal inputs at the beginning of the planning process. FM 7-0 and other FMs provide guidance on developing a unit's METL.

 a. Develop Unit METL. The first step in developing a METL is analyzing all specific and implied missions and other guidance. Next, the unit's mission is restated. After analyzing the unit's missions and external directives, a list of tasks is identified which must be accomplished if the unit is to successfully accomplish its mission? Subordinate commanders and key NCOs participate in selecting the tasks. The task list is developed using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of the MTP, missions assigned to the Petroleum Group by contingency plans, and missions directed by higher HQ guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit's mission. The selected tasks are forwarded to the next higher HQ for approval. The tasks selected are the unit's METL.

b. Establish Training Objectives. After the METL is identified, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards, which describe the situation or environment and ultimate outcome criteria the unit, must meet to successfully perform the tasks. Training objectives and standards for the METL can be obtained from the MTP, STP, higher HQ guidance, and local SOPs.

c. Conduct Training Assessment. The training assessment is the Commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to provide CHS within the TO. The commander, his staff, and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (Trained), "P" (Needs Practice), "U" (Untrained), or "?" (Unknown). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit's training requirements, Figure 3-1.

Mission-Essential Tasks	CURRENT TRAINING STATUS ARMY UNIVERSAL TASK LIST				TRAINING STRATEGY
	Deploy/ Maneuver	Protect the Force	CSS/ Sustainment	Exercise C2	Overall
Supervise operations security program	P	T	T	T	T
Coordinate internal logistics	T	P	T	T	T
Conduct mission analysis	U	T	T	P	P
Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield	P	U	?	?	?
Legend: T - Trained U – Untrained P - Needs Practice ? – Unknown					

Figure 3-1. Sample Commander's Training Assessment

d.   Develop Training Strategy and Commander's Guidance. The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency each mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance, which includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must:

(1) Review higher HQ commander's goals.
(2) Spell in real-world terms, what the Petroleum Group will do to comply with the goals of higher HQ commanders.
(3) List in broad terms his own goals for the unit.

Figure 3-2 provides a sample of the Group's goals.

--Attain and sustain proficiency in all MTP missions.
--Maintain a 90 percent operational readiness rate.
--Attain and sustain 100 percent support to supported forces.

Figure 3-2. Sample Petroleum Group Command Goals

e. Establish Training Priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on training status, the criticality of the task, and the relative training emphasis the task should receive. Figure 3-3 provides a sample training priority list.

TASK	SOURCE	TRAINING PRIORITY
Conduct mission analysis	MTP	2
Formulate feasible courses of action	MTP	3
Develop intelligence estimate	MTP	4
Develop personnel estimate	MTP	5
Prepare operations plan/operations order and annexes	MTP	1

Figure 3-3. Sample Training Priority List

f. Prepare Long-Range Planning Calendar. The long-range planning calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range training events to identify time periods available for training mission-essential tasks. The long-range calendar projects the training events and activities of the Petroleum Group training program for the upcoming 12 to 18 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below:

(1) Select training events and activities to train the missions. The commander must project events that will enable him to achieve his goals.

(2) Assign time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the Petroleum Group training program.

(3) Examine various training alternatives to make optimum use of the training support available to the unit.
Available training resources must be compared against higher HQ-directed training, Petroleum Group directed training events, and subordinate-level projected training events. Resource tools available to the ASG commander are the BLTM, OPTEMPO, and STRAC.

(4) Obtain approval of long-range plans from higher HQ.

(5) Issue guidance. Training guidance is issued to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range planning calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range planning calendar and generally includes:

(a) Training policies.
(b) Types of mandatory training.
(c) Training resource guidance.

(d)   Quotas for centralized training (schools).
(e)   Training goals.

3-3. Short-Range Planning. A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (3 months). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below:

a.   Review the training program, current unit proficiency, resources, and training environment.

(1)   Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.

(2)   Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

(3)   Review current unit proficiency to update priorities.

(4)   Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

(5)   Review training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively impact on the training program are:
(a)   Personnel assigned.
(b)   Personnel turbulence.
(c)   Morale.
(d)   Education programs.
(e)   Mandatory training.
(f)   Visits, inspections, and tests.
(g)   Supplies and equipment.
(h)   Non-mission-related activities.
(i)   Other programs.

b.   Develop a detailed plan of action for short-range training plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below:

(1)   Examine events scheduled on the long-range planning calendar to determine if they are still valid.

(2)   Transfer valid events to a short-range planning calendar.

(3)   Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events.

(4)   Analyze missions to determine related individual, leader, and collective tasks.

(5)   Determine if there are any weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these identified weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader, and unit strengths, as necessary.

(6)   Select the specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the commander with training objectives.

(7)   Prepare a short-range planning calendar or three monthly schedules. The short-range planning calendar provides a detailed plan of action for the specified period.

(8)   Review short-range plans with higher HQ.

(9)   Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.

3-4. Near-Term Planning. The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Using the short-range planning calendar, prepare weekly training schedules.

a.   Review the training program for unit proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long-range and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are still valid.

b.   Finalize plans based upon the review of the training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks, and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.

c.   Inform trainers, OCs, OPFOR, and support personnel of what is being trained, why it is being trained, and what their role in the training will be.

3-5. Training the HQ. Planning training for the HQ provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that have to do with time and availability of personnel. The staff and HQ personnel are involved in day-to-day operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to adequately address the training needs of these elements. These elements must be capable of fulfilling their roles in order for the Petroleum Group to perform its missions. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include an effective method of training individuals, staffs, leaders, and units.

a.   Training the HQ (Staff Training).

(1)   Training of the staff presents the greatest challenge within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the training objectives for the staff. The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. Examples of tasks that any staff must be able to perform are:

      (a)   Analyze terrain and threat information.
      (b)   Function as an effective team.
      (c)   Exchange information.
      (d)   Prepare estimates.
      (e)   Give appraisals.
      (f)   Make recommendations and decisions.
      (g)   Prepare plans.
      (h)   Issue orders.
      (i)   Coordinate and control unit operations.
      (j)   Supervise subordinate units.

(2)   The strategy used to train the staff will vary. Based on the considerations used in planning training, (levels of proficiency and training support available), FM 7-0 contains detailed information on the conduct of exercises. Some methods of staff training include the following exercises.

(a)   TEWT. TEWTs are low-cost, low-overhead. These exercises are conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. TEWTs are used by commanders to train subordinate leaders and staffs to analyze terrain and plan for the conduct of unit missions.

(b)   MAPEX. MAPEXs are low-cost, low-overhead. These training exercises allow commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and control functions to support their decisions under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may be used to train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.

(c)   CPX. CPXs are medium-cost, medium-overhead. These training exercises may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use a battle simulation to drive staff actions.

(d)   FTX. FTXs are high-cost, high-overhead. These exercises are conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. Unit-conducted FTXs exercise the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of unit operations. They normally require the staff planning tasks to be completed before the exercise begins. Higher HQ-conducted FTXs provide the best opportunity for the staff to combine all of

its skills and perform as they would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.

(3)   At Group level, a method to optimize staff and Unit training is used to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, CPXs, CFXs, and CALFEXs to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming ASG FTXs. This exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and also makes optimum use of unit field training time. Each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

b.   Training the HQ. Training the HQ is a complex task This requires both unit and staff training programs. Normal daily operations place a unique burden on the commander to accomplish training. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The Petroleum Group's chief of staff coordinates with the HQ commander to ensure individual soldiering tasks are being mastered.

3-6. Development of Training Exercises. Chapter 4 provides sample exercises for the Group to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Since only an example FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the Group to develop exercises for its own use. This section provides general procedures for the Group staff to use for FTX preparation and for the Group supporting STXs. Exercise plans are normally prepared during preparation of the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below:

a.   Selection of Missions and Tasks for Training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

b.   Site Selection. Confirm selection of a training area.

c.   Scenario Development. After missions and tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise.

(1)   List the missions, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2)   Identify events necessary for the control of the exercise. These events would normally include issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistics action necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3)   Prepare exercise overlays, which show the sequence of actions and terrain to be used for each event.

(4)   Determine the estimated time for each event, using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d.   Selection of OCs and OPFOR. OCs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and STX when MILES is used. It is difficult for Petroleum Group to provide these from its own resources. When OCs and OPFOR must be provided from within the Petroleum Group's, unit leaders may have to serve as the OCs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attainment of the exercise objectives. Ideally, higher HQ should provide OCs and OPFOR.

e.   Preparation of the Control Plan. Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and OCs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan should consist of:

(1)   Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
(2)   Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.
(3)   Detailed schedule of activities for units.
(4)   OPORDs and FRAGOs for friendly units.

Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.

f.   Preparation of the Evaluation Plan. All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, by whom, and at what time. The evaluation will consist of:

(1)   Specific instructions for the OCs.
(2)   A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each OC.
(3)   Detailed time schedules for evaluation and AARs.

3-7. Mission Outline.   The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical mission to the FTX and STXs. This outline should assist the commander and staff in the preparation of training plans. Figure 3-4 is a sample mission outline for the HQ Petroleum Group.

Headquarters, Petroleum Group
Mission Outline
FTX - Direct Petroleum And Water Operations

STX 63-6-E0001 -- Supervise Group Level Deployment	
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-6-4850
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-6-4851
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-6-4852
Supervise Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-6-4853
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4854
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-6-4855
Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support	63-6-4856
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-6-4857
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-6-4858
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-6-4859
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-6-4860
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-6-4861
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-6-4862
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-6-4863
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-6-4864
Direct Integration Activities	63-6-4871
Plan Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-6-4872
Plan Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-6-4873

STX 63-6-0011—Plan Petroleum and Water Support Operations	
Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates	10-6-0200
Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations	10-6-0201
Receive the Mission	63-6-4000
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-6-4001
Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques	63-6-4002
Develop Feasible Courses of Action	63-6-4003
Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation	63-6-4004
Analyze Feasible Courses of Action	63-6-4005
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order	63-6-4006
Prepare Annexes, Appendices, Enclosures, Tabs, Additions and Overlays	63-6-4007
Develop Road Movement Order	63-6-4009
Develop Occupation Plan	63-6-4010
Plan Area Tactical Operations	63-6-4011
Provide Assistance for Planning Logistics and Combat Health Services Support	63-6-4012
Plan Rear Operations	63-6-4013
Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan	63-6-4022
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

Figure 3-4. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Petroleum Group

FTX- Direct Petroleum And Water Operations

STX 63-6-E0003 -- Supervise Group Level Relocation	
Develop Road Movement Order	63-6-4009
Develop Occupation Plan	63-6-4010
Supervise Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-6-4014
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-6-4017
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Coordinate Transportation Support	63-6-4030
Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-6-4037
Maintain Communications	63-6-4038
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

STX 63-6-E0004 -- Supervise Group Level Area Establishment	
Establish Command Post (Forward)	63-6-4015
Establish Communications	63-6-4016
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters	63-6-4018
Establish Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas	63-6-4019
Supervise Support Operations Sub-Elements Functions	63-6-4021
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-6-4037
Maintain Communications	63-6-4038
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

STX 10-6-0013 -- Direct Petroleum And Water Support Operations	
Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations	10-6-0202
Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs	10-6-0203
Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities	10-6-0206
Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support	10-6-4062
Operate the Logistics and Combat Health Services Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (LOC)	63-6-4020
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Coordinate Combat Health Services Support	63-6-4029
Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination	63-6-4032
Operate the Tactical Support Area of the LOC	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-6-4041
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Provide Automation Support	63-6-4043
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-6-4050
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

Figure 3-4. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Petroleum Group (continued)

FTX - Direct Petroleum And Water Operations

STX 63-6-E0007 -- Coordinate Group Level Force Protection	
Plan Area Tactical Operations	63-6-4011
Plan Rear Operations	63-6-4013
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-6-4037
Maintain Communications	63-6-4038
Conduct Command Religious Support	63-6-4041
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Operate Rear Tactical Operations Center	63-6-4047
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-6-4049
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-6-4050
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

STX 63-6-E0008 -- Supervise Group Level Redeployment	
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326
Supervise Redeployment Activities	63-6-4853
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4854
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-6-4865
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4866
Provide Redeployment Support	63-6-4867
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-6-4868
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-6-4869
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-6-4870
Plan Redeployment	63-6-4874

Figure 3-4. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Petroleum Group (continued)

Chapter 4

Training Exercise

4-1.   General. Training exercises are used to train and practice personnel in the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains two types of exercises: FTX and STX. These exercises assist the unit commander in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's staff mission proficiency. This chapter contains one FTX and seven STXs which are designed to provide a basic plan to achieve proficiency in the eight supporting missions identified for the unit staff. Table 4-1 is a listing of the FTX and STXs.

Table 4-1. List of Exercises

Mission Number	Title
FTX	Direct Petroleum And Water Operations
63-6-E0001	Supervise Group Level Deployment
10-6-0011	Plan Petroleum and Water Support Operations
63-6-E0003	Supervise Group Level Relocation
63-6-E0004	Supervise Group Level Area Establishment
10-6-0013	Direct Petroleum And Water Support Operations
63-6-E0007	Coordinate Group Level Force Protection
63-6-E0008	Supervise Group Level Redeployment

4-2.   Field Training Exercise: The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit staff to train its personnel to perform its overall critical wartime mission. This FTX provides a logical sequence for the performance of tasks previously trained in the STXs. The overall critical wartime mission, Provide Theater-Level Area Logistics Support, provides the FTX orientation for HQ, unit's training. This FTX should be conducted when the supported higher unit is also conducting an FTX.

4-3.   Situational Training Exercise: The STX is a short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercise used to train a group of closely related and collective tasks. The commander may modify the STX based on local METT-TC and available personnel and equipment. The STX provides the information for training personnel to perform the missions which make up the overall critical wartime mission. The STX performs the following functions:

a.   Provides repetitive training on unit missions.

b.   Allows the commander to focus training on identified weaknesses.

c.   Allows the unit staff to practice each supporting mission before the critical wartime mission.

d.　　Saves time by providing a majority of information needed to develop a method for training.

4-4.　Safety: During any training exercise, soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious. Evaluators and trainers have the responsibility to ensure all training is conducted within established safety constraints. Prior to each exercise, all personnel will be briefed on specific safety measures to be taken during execution.

4-5.　Visualization

a.　　Battle command is the art of battle decision making and leading. It includes controlling operations, as well as motivating soldiers and their organizations into action to accomplish missions. Armed with the knowledge of the current state and the desired end state, commanders visualize those actions necessary to achieve the desired future state and then translate that visualization into action. Battle command includes the following:

- ·　Assigning missions.

- ·　Prioritizing and allocating resources.

- ·　Selecting the critical time and place to act.

- ·　Knowing how and when to make adjustments during the fight.

b.　　Battlefield visualization is the mental process that supports the commander's decision making process and his ability to anticipate support requirements. Using a vision of proposed combat support allows the commander to know when, and if a decision should be made. Battlefield visualization is a continuous process that commences with the receipt of a warning order and continues through the end of an operation.

c.　　Battlefield information systems have the capability of providing a clearer picture to the commander. These systems enhance the commander's ability to understand the current state of friendly and enemy forces. This understanding extends beyond the knowledge of their physical location and includes environmental, readiness, and human considerations. It includes the ability to see and understand the dynamic relationship between supporters and supported as the commander leads his subordinate elements through the sequence of events.

d.　　The available information systems enhance the commander's situational awareness by providing him with an unprecedented level of friendly and enemy information. Commanders must recognize that the common, relevant picture produced by a myriad of information systems represents both known and estimated information, and is possibly flawed by human input. The commander must tailor this information with his judgment, intuition, and experience.

FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE
DIRECT PETROLEUM AND WATER OPERATIONS

1.   Objective. This FTX is designed to provide unit headquarters staff and key leaders with training in their critical wartime mission: <u>Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations</u>. The Headquarters must become proficient in the supervision of: strategic deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations', supervision of the relocation of subordinate elements and sustainment resources, and the establishment of subordinate elements' bases and facilities. The HQ, unit must also be proficient in planning and directing petroleum and water support operations and managing distribution systems for unit and attached elements, coordinating force protection activities; and supervising redeployment of subordinate elements to home station.

2.   Interface.

a.   This FTX supports the Theater Support Command FTX - Support Theater Tactical Operations.

b.   Training the following unit level STXs supports this FTX:

(1) STX 63-6-E0001:   Supervise Group Level Deployment

(2) STX 10-6-0011:   Plan Petroleum and Water Support Operations.

(3) STX 63-6-E0003:   Supervise Group Level Relocation

(4) STX 63-6-E0004:   Supervise Group Level Area Establishment

(5) STX 10-6-0013:   Direct Petroleum and Water Operations.

(6) STX 63-6-E0007:   Coordinate Group Level Force

(7) STX 63-6-E0008:   Supervise Group Level Redeployment

3.   Training Enhancers.

a.   The training matrices in Chapter 2 show the collective tasks which must be mastered in order to perform HQ, unit missions. Training emphasizing the following activities will improve HQ, unit's ability to perform its missions:

(1)   Supervising deployment of subordinate units.

(2)   Planning, coordinating, directing, and managing petroleum support operations. Maintain situational awareness of distribution systems that provide location and configuration asset visibility and overall connectivity to supported units, adjacent units, and higher headquarters.

(3)   Coordinating the relocation and establishment of subordinate units in a new area.

(4)   Coordinating rear operations in defense of subordinate elements and sustainment resources.

(5)   Planning and coordinating the redeployment of subordinate elements to home station.

b.   The supported higher echelon and attached elements are dependent on the unit for petroleum support. The unit training cycle should be synchronized with subordinate units and supported units. It is important to develop a habitual relationship and closely coordinate annual training plans between and among organizations of the unit, combat elements, and combat support elements of the supported higher headquarters. This training may be conducted in garrison or the local training area (LTA) by the following methods:

(1)   Map exercise (MAPEX) combined with a sand table exercise.

(2)   Training exercise without troops (TEWT).

(3)   Communications Exercise (COMEX)/Situational Awareness Exercise. These exercises are used to practice battle command information procedures and operations, as well as logistics support operations. Units practice mission tasks using appropriate automation systems, to include using Combat Service Support Control System and standard army management information systems (STAMIS). The HQ, unit should practice continuity of operations (COOP) techniques and procedures in order to develop manual procedures for use in the event of automation failure or disruption due to enemy action.

c.   Training will be further enhanced by establishing an aggressive spirit in leaders and subordinate units, and developing cohesiveness and trust between the supporting corps and the supported units. These attributes will be fostered by the following activities:

(1)   Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness program. Such activity should be conducted with members of subordinate unit elements.

(2)   Leader or individual confidence courses.

(3)   Appropriate training films (CSS and combat) that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.

(4)   Awareness of unit's heritage.

(5)   Partnership activity and training exchange programs between and among members of the unit and maneuver units and higher echelon troops. For example, the combat arms and combat support units have the expertise to teach combat and combat support related skills to members of the unit. The unit, in turn, has the capability to teach logistics support related skills to members of combat and combat support units. Such activity will foster the mutual respect and trust needed on future non-linear battlefields.

d.   This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends after restoration of the unit to home station or mobilization site. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario.

c.   This exercise may be conducted under several options. These options are not all-inclusive, and can be exercised in various combinations.

(1)   Conditional options, in support of:

(a)   Support offensive operations.

(b)   Support defensive operations.

(c)   Support retrograde operations.

(d)   Day, night, or NBC operations.

(e)   Support and stability operations.

(2)   Operational options.

(a)   Coordinate Force Protection Activities: Plan Rear Area Operations, Plan Unit Area Tactical Operations, and Direct Responses to Threat Actions.

(b)   Coordinate Logistics Support Operations: Plan Area Logistics Support Operations, Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements' Bases and Sustainment Resources, Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements' Bases and Facilities, Direct Area Logistics Support Operations.

(c)   Coordinate Force Projection Operations: Coordinate Unit Deployment Operations, Onward Movement and Unit Redeployment Operations.

**Table 4-2. Headquarters, Petroleum Group FTX,
Direct Petroleum and Water Operations**

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
1.	Receive warning order	10 min
2.	Direct pre-deployment alert activities	10 min
3.	Establish the emergency operations center	2 hrs
4.	Operate the emergency operations center	10 hrs
5.	Supervise deployment activities	3 hrs
6.	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program support	3 hrs
7.	Provide deployment personnel and administrative services support	4 hrs
8.	Coordinate family assistance plan	2 hrs
9.	Coordinate deployment training support	2 hrs
10.	Provide deployment intelligence support functions	2 hrs
11.	Provide deployment logistics support	8 hrs
12.	Update movement plan/order	1 hr
13.	Coordinate rear detachment support	2 hrs
14.	Perform home station rear detachment activities	2 hrs
15.	Coordinate movement of subordinate elements to aerial and sea ports	1 hr
16.	Perform deployment advance party activities	4 hrs
17.	AAR	1 hr
18.	Perform advance/quartering party activities	4 hrs
19.	Coordinate Theater Assembly Area	2 hrs
20.	Coordinate onward movement	1 hr
21.	Establish command post (forward)	2 hrs
22.	Conduct mission analysis	1 hr
23.	Prepare estimates	1 hr
24.	Prepare operational/commander's estimate	1 hr
25.	Prepare OPLAN/OPORD and annexes	1 hr
26.	Plan the relocation of bases and sustainment resources	2 hrs

**Table 4-2. Headquarters, Area Support Group FTX,
Direct Petroleum and Water Operations (continued)**

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	
27.	Supervise the relocation of subordinate elements, sustainment resources, and unit HQ	4 hrs	
28.	Supervise the establishment of subordinate elements' bases and facilities	6 hrs	
29.	AAR	1 hr	
30.	Provide Theater-Level Logistics (*includes 31, 32 and 33)	88 hrs	
31.	*Plan area logistics support operations	16hrs	
32.	*Direct area logistics support operations	36 hrs	
33.	*Coordinate distribution systems	36 hrs	
34.	AAR	1 hr	
35.	Coordinate force protection activities	8 hrs	
36.	Defend against Level II/III attack	2 hrs	
37.	Hand over battle to a TCF		45 min
38.	Coordinate unit ADC operations	1 hr	30 min
39.	AAR	1 hr	
40.	Receive warning order for redeployment	15 min	
41.	Coordinate reconstitution of the unit for deployment	2 hrs	
42.	Coordinate turn in of excess sustainment stocks	1 hr	
43.	Prepare redeployment movement plan/order	1 hr	
44.	Supervise unit redeployment activities	2 hrs	
45.	Coordinate redeployment support	2 hrs cell	
46.	Coordinate redeployment advance party activities	2 hrs	
47.	Coordinate theater rear detachment activities	2 hrs	
48.	Coordinate home station activities	2 hrs	
49.	AAR	2 hrs	

**Table 4-2. Headquarters, Area Support Group FTX,
Direct Petroleum and Water Operations (continued)**

Total Hours 101 hrs 35 min

NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.

NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility or under MOPP conditions.

NOTE 3: Time must be added to this exercise (sleeping time, eating time, and travel time to and from the training area).

*   Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

---

4.   General Situation.

        a.   The multifunctional unit plans and directs area logistics services support, and monitor distribution systems to support tactical operations.   The headquarters staff is charged with supervising the strategic deployment of subordinate elements to new theaters of operations. It is responsible for planning logistics support operations, and distribution systems; relocating and establishing subordinate units and sustainment resources in a new area; directing logistics and combat health services support operations; and monitoring distribution systems in support of the higher echelon. It is also responsible for coordinating force protection activities and strategic redeployment of the unit to home station.

        b.   The higher echelon has been alerted for strategic deployment to a potentially hostile country. The HQ, element must deploy to provide command and control to subordinate and attached logistics support units, plan and direct area logistics support operations, and monitor distribution systems to support tactical operations. HQ, unit personnel will deploy by air. Equipment will deploy by both sea and air. OPFOR is capable of inflicting Levels I, II, and III attacks and employing weapons of mass destruction at sea and aerial ports of debarkation, staging and marshaling areas, and along main supply routes. HQ, element is prepared for OPFOR activity during reception, staging, onward movement and integration (RSO&I) operations, establishment of subordinate elements' bases and facilities and during logistics and combat health services support operations. HQ, Theater will provide guidance to the HQ, unit when a level II/III threat is anticipated. Upon notification of a Level II/III attack, HQ, unit will cease logistics operations and coordinate force protection activities within

the unit tactical area and subsequent battle hand over to Military Police (MP) units or a tactical combat force (TCF).

c.   This exercise is conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit will operate under threat of enemy assault by weapons of mass destruction, ground or air attack, indirect conventional fires, and electronic warfare.

d.   The HQ, unit should be prepared to relocate subordinate elements forward or laterally, as required, by "leapfrogging" while continuing to provide required logistics support to the theater.

e.   The HQ, unit should be prepared to relocate at least once every 72 hours.

5.   Special Situation.

a.   The higher echelon commander has issued the following warning order:

> "Be prepared to deploy the unit to ------- vicinity -------, coordinates -------- and establish subordinate elements' bases and facilities to support tactical operations. Be prepared to support units and attached elements within ------ hours of arrival. Coordinate with higher echelon G4 on logistics services support requirements and EAD distribution systems to support the maneuver elements and higher echelon for the task organization. Priority of support will initially go to the ---."

b.   The unit commander issues the following instructions to his staff.

> "We are being deployed to support theater elements and attached units in -------- vicinity --------, coordinates -------- and must be prepared to support tactical operations within ----- hours of arrival. Priority of support is to ---- TBA. Get with the G3 on higher headquarters' task organization and the G4 for logistics requirements and EAD distribution systems to support the higher echelon. Begin your process for deploying subordinate and attached elements to a new theater of operations, planning logistics services support operations, establishing subordinate elements and facilities, directing logistics services support operations, managing distribution systems, relocating subordinate elements and sustainment resources, and coordinating force protection activities. Are there any questions? This exercise will begin with receipt of a warning order from me and end upon notification from me."

6.   Support Requirements.

a.   Minimum Trainers and OCs. This exercise, if internal, will be conducted by the commander, who will also be the trainer and the senior internal OC. If possible, there should be an OC with each staff section and subordinate unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

b.   Vehicles/Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment are needed for each OC and the primary trainer. Radios and digital means of communications are required for OPFOR vehicles during operations. Each OC reports directly to the primary trainer.

c.   Opposing Force. An OPFOR company (+) is required to simulate Level II/III threat activities. The OPFOR should be well trained in patrol, assault, and guerrilla tactics and should have specific missions in the unit area. MILES can be used by the controller to assess damage and casualties to units.

d.   Maneuver Area. Depending on local training conditions, a training area with minimum dimensions of 20 by 20 kilometers is desired. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 30 kilometers.

e.   Master Incident List (MIL). During the FTX, MIL items should be continually fed into proper channels. Input from maneuver units in theater, subordinate units, and supported divisional, EAD, and OPFOR causes responses from the unit staff. A major purpose of this FTX is to drive unit staff and subordinate units to a simulated combat level of support requirements. The appropriate Battlefield Functional Area Control System (BFACS) should serve as the primary vehicle to input items from the MIL.

f.   Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit STX and the requirements for the headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) when these elements participate. Table 4-3 shows the suggested support requirements for this FTX

7.   Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs to be used by the OCs.

Table 4-3. T & EOs for Evaluating this FTX - Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations

Task	Task Number
Supervise Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-6-4014
Establish Command Post (Forward)	63-6-4015
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-6-4017
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters	63-6-4018
Establish the Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas	63-6-4019
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-6-4850

**Table 4-3. T & EOs for Evaluating this FTX - Direct Petroleum
and Water Support Operations (continued)**

Task	Task Number
Establish the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)	63-6-4851
Operate the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)	63-6-4852
Supervise Deployment/Re-deployment Activities	63-6-4853
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4854
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-6-4855
Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support	63-6-4856
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-6-4857
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-6-4858
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-6-4859
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-6-4860
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-6-4861
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-6-4862
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-6-4863
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-6-4864
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-6-4865
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4866
Provide Redeployment Support	63-6-4867
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-6-4868
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-6-4869
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-6-4870
Direct Integration Activities	63-6-4871
Plan Command Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-6-4872
Plan Area Tactical Operations	63-6-4011

**Table 4-3. T & EOs for Evaluating this FTX - Direct Petroleum
and Water Support Operations (continued)**

Task	Task Number
Plan Base Cluster Operations	63-6-4013
Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-6-4037
Operate Rear Tactical Operations Center	63-6-4047
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-6-4049
Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates	10-6-0200
Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations	10-6-0201
Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations	10-6-0202
Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs	10-6-0203
Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities	10-6-0206
Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support	10-6-4062
Provide Assistance for Supported Command's Logistics Planning	63-6-4012
Operate the Logistics Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-6-4020
Supervise Support Operations Sub-Elements Functions	63-6-4021
Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP)	63-6-4022
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Coordinate Combat Health Services Support	63-6-4029
Coordinate Transportation Support	63-6-4030
Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination	63-6-4032
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-6-4041
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-6-4050
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326
Receive the Mission	63-6-4000
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-6-4001

**Table 4-3. T & EOs for Evaluating this FTX - Direct Petroleum
and Water Support Operations (continued)**

Task	Task Number
Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques	63-6-4002
Develop Feasible Courses of Action	63-6-4003
Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation	63-6-4004
Analyze Feasible Courses of Action	63-6-4005
Prepare Operations Plan/Order	63-6-4006
Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays	63-6-4007
Develop Road Movement Order	63-6-4009
Develop Occupation Plan	63-6-4010
Establish Communications	63-6-4016
Maintain Communications	63-6-4038
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Plan Command Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-6-4873
Plan Command Redeployment	63-6-4874

HEADQUARTERS, PETROLEUM GROUP
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE GROUP LEVEL DEPLOYMENT
STX 63-6-E0001

1.   Objective. This STX trains the unit staff and key leaders in supervising the deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations. This STX also provides the commander and key leaders and staff with practice in planning, controlling, and coordinating subordinate unit elements' deployment activities. The HQ, unit must become proficient in planning and preparing subordinate units for force projection operations.

2.   Interface.

        a.   This STX supports the Theater FTX – Support Theater Tactical Operations.

        b.   This STX is supported by the Group-level STX - Supervise Group Level Deployment.

        c.   This STX can be used to plan and implement the deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding battalion STX should be trained prior to the unit exercise.

3.   Training.

        a.   Leader Training.

                (1)   This STX can be used to plan and implement deployment (land, sea, or air) of the unit as a part of an FTX or CPX.

                (2)   During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-65, 63-2-2 and 100-17series; and ARs 220-10, 700-84 and 750-1 should be discussed. The T&EOs listed in this STX should also be reviewed.

                (3)   The leader should use a map of the location where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

                (4)   Command Post Exercises (CPXs), Command Field Exercises (CFXs), and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders. STXs support such exercises. Situational awareness should be maintained throughout this STX using the near time capability of communications and information systems.

(5)   Simulations and games are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They are also used to exercise command, control, and situational awareness at various command and staff levels.

(6)   Tips for leader training.

(a)   Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing deployment operations.

(b)   Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where deployment activities will take place.

(c)   Leaders should review the unit and higher echelon deployment SOPs.

b.   Tips for Training.

(1)   After the unit demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-4, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a)   Inclement weather.

(b)   Various unit category levels.

(c)   Different modes of transportation.

(d)   Numerous incremental movements.

(e)   With or without NBC conditions.

(f)   Day or night.

(2)   The HQ, unit must become proficient in the doctrine and TTP of planning and supervising deployment activities before attempting more complex options.

(3)   After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4.   Training Enhancers.

        a.   The commander, in coordination with Theater staff, secures deployment guidance, orders, pertinent plans, and SOPs. The commander also reviews deployment contingency plans.

        b.   Subordinate unit commanders update unit deployment plans in coordination with HQ, unit and installation support elements.

        c.   The theater level G3 provides unit with the deployment sequence.

        d.   Unless otherwise approved by the senior OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

        e.   This exercise begins with the receipt of a deployment warning order and ends when the unit is established in the theater of operations. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-4 This table includes a suggested scenario.

Table 4-4. Headquarters, Petroleum Group STX 63-6-E0001, Supervise Group Level Deployment		
EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
1.	Plan unit deployment (in peacetime environment)	4 hrs
2.	Receive notification	10 min
3.	Verify notification	10 min
4.	Receive commander's guidance	40 min
5.	Plan unit deployment	4 hrs
6.	Direct deployment alert activities	2 hrs
7.	Operate the emergency operations center	3 hrs
8.	Supervise unit pre-deployment activities	2 hrs
9.	*Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program support	2 hrs
10.	*Coordinate deployment personnel services and administrative services support	2 hrs
11.	*Coordinate family assistance plan	2 hrs
12.	*Coordinate deployment training support	3 hrs
13.	Provide deployment intelligence support functions	3 hrs
14.	Provide deployment logistics support	2 hrs
15.	Receive movement order	30 min
16.	Coordinate rear detachment support	2 hrs

**Table 4-4. Headquarters, Petroleum Group STX 63-6-E0001,
Supervise Group Level Deployment (continued)**

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
17.	Perform home station rear detachment activities	2 hrs
18.	Coordinate movement of subordinate elements	2 hrs
19.	Perform deployment advance party activities	2 hrs
20.	Coordinate APOE/SPOE activities	2 hrs
21.	Coordinate embarkation activities	2 hrs
22.	AAR	1 hr
23.	Coordinate debarkation activities	2 hrs
24.	Coordinate staging area activities	1 hr
25.	Receive movement order	30 min
26.	Coordinate movement of subordinate elements	2 hrs
27.	Perform deployment advance party activities	1 hr
28.	Final AAR	

Total Time: 50 hrs

NOTE 1: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.

NOTE 2: Some events are accomplished concurrently while others occur in sequence.

* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously.

5.   General Situation.

a.   The unit is currently at home station. The unit is under the command and control of Headquarters, Theater Support Command. Its mission is to support area and supported tactical operations.

b.   Subordinate and attached unit commanders provide personnel and equipment status reports.

c.   The supporting installation provides required deployment support.

d.   APOEs, SPOEs and the OCONUS location are identified.

      e.   This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6.   FRAGO. The commander issues the following FRAGO:

> "We have been alerted to deploy OCONUS with the Theater. New OCONUS location is ---------, vicinity --------- (grid coordinates). Begin your planning process to prepare the unit for deployment. Be prepared to deploy within ------ hours. I will conduct an AAR after the conclusion of this STX."

7.   Support Requirements.

      a.   Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander or unit XO as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the detail required in evaluating the elements of deployment, a minimum of one OC per staff section is required. The trainers and OCs monitor and evaluate the accuracy of the data, the soundness of planning and recommendations, and the thoroughness of coordination.

      b.   Opposing Force:
      (1)   The OPFOR is not required for this situational training exercise.

      (2)   The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

      (3)   The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess facility damage, equipment losses, and personnel casualties.

      c.   Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and digital communications for the OCs are used. The senior trainer/OC requires communications to provide input from the MIL.

      d.   Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, an adequate training area of approximately 20 by 20 kilometers is desired for setting up operations. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 30 kilometers.

      e.   Master Incident List (MIL). During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive staff actions. MIL items should be inputted using the appropriate communications and information systems.

      f.   Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8.   T&EO Sequence. Table 4-5 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

**Table 4-5 T&EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX 63-6-E0001,
Supervise Group Level Deployment**

Task	Task Number
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-6-4850
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-6-4851
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-6-4852
Supervise Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-6-4853
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4854
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-6-4855
Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support	63-6-4856
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-6-4857
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-6-4858
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-6-4859
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-6-4860
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-6-4861
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-6-4862
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-6-4863
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-6-4864
Direct Integration Activities	63-6-4871
Plan Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-6-4872
Plan Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-6-4873

HEADQUARTERS, PETROLEUM GROUP
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
PLAN PETROLEUM AND WATER SUPPORT OPERATIONS STX 10-6-0011

1.   Objective. This STX trains the unit staff and other key members to plan petroleum and water operations in support of division tactical operations. The staff must become proficient in analyzing the mission; determining logistics support requirements; planning distribution systems; determining analog and digital communications requirements; determining and coordinating available sustainment resources (including Foreign Nation Support (FNS); preparing the commanders estimate and supporting estimates; and developing the OPLAN/OPORD with annexes and overlays. The staff must be able to successfully plan a unit ground movement, establish subordinate elements and sustainment resources in a new location, and relocate subordinate elements and facilities as required and coordinate force protection activities. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and preparing operational, tactical, and distribution plans and orders necessary to provide logistics support for various types of combat operations.

2.   Interface.

        a.   This STX can be used as a CPX to develop plans.

        b.   This STX supports the unit FTX, Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations.

3.   Training.

        a.   Leader Training.

                (1)   This STX can be used as part of a CPX or FTX.

                (2)   During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP; and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 63-2-2, 71-100, 100-10, 101-5, and 101-5-1 should be discussed. The T&EOs listed in this STX should also be reviewed.
                (3)   CPXs, CFXs, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when selected STX locations are used. A CPX facilitates communications set up, distribution management planning, practice of the unit TSOP, and staff coordinating procedures.
                (4)   Communications Exercise (COMEX)/Situational Awareness Exercise practices battle command information procedures and operations, and logistics and combat health services support coordination. Units practice these mission tasks using appropriate automation systems, to include Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS) and other battlefield functional area control systems (BFACS), and logistics and medical standard army management information systems (STAMIS). CSSCS provides a concise picture of unit requirements and support capabilities by collecting, processing, and displaying information on key items of supply, services, and

personnel that the commander deems crucial to the success of an operation. CSSCS supports the decision making process with course of action (COA) analysis. The staff can analyze up to three COAs for a 5-day period. Variables include combat posture, higher organization, miles traveled, and geographical region.

(5) Simulations and games are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. A MAPEX, when used, should be combined with a sand table exercise. If possible, a map of the location where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain should be used, if possible.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for preparing operational and distribution plans and orders.

(b) The unit TSOP should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training areas where movement, establishment, and mission tasks will be performed.

(d) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the CSSCS database of corps personnel and equipment authorizations, as well as unit and equipment planning factors. Leaders should also familiarize themselves with the Baseline Resource Item List (BRIL) and techniques to determine critical items for inclusion into the Commander's Tracked Items List (CTIL).

(e) The senior leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the unit commander or XO with this STX are conduct mission analysis, restate the mission, issue planning guidance, supervise staff, perform coordination, analyze staff estimates, prepare commander's estimate, and approve plans/orders.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the unit staff demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-6, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a) Offensive operations.

(b) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(c) Stability and support operations.

(d) Defensive operations.

(e)   Retrograde operations.

(2)   The unit staff must become proficient in its basic mission tasks: establishing and maintaining situational awareness; working as a staff to develop completed staff products; and using BFACS to plan and manage distribution systems, coordinate force protection, and to direct logistics and combat health services support in support of tactical operations before attempting more complex options.

(3)   After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit staff sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4.   Training Enhancers.

a.   The senior trainer completes the mission analysis and issues planning guidance, restates the mission, and selects a course of action based on the unit commander's guidance or based upon his own judgment.

b.   Staff estimates and recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

c.   Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d.   The unit should be able to relocate at least once every 144 hours.

e.   The S2/S3 should complete the OPLAN/OPORD and provide a hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation. The Support Operations Officer should complete the Support Operations and Distribution Systems plans.

5.   General Situation.

a.   The unit is deployed in a combat zone. The unit mission is to support supported tactical operations. The unit commander has received a warning order from the theater and/or supported commander.

b.   The theater and/or supported division commanders' planning guidance and restated mission guidance have been reviewed. The unit commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The theater and/or the supported division commanders' estimate(s) have been received and are used as a basis for the development of the operations estimate.

c.   This exercise begins with receipt of a warning order and ends when the OPORD/OPLAN is distributed. AARs are conducted after completion of staff estimates, after a course of action is selected, and following the OPORD/OPLAN briefing. Table 4-6 is a suggested scenario.

**Table 4-6. Headquarters, Area Support Group STX 10-6-0011,
Plan Petroleum and Water Support Operations**

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	
1.	Receive warning order		15 min
2.	Analyze mission		45 min
3.	Restate mission and issue planning guidance		30 min
4.	Analyze area of operation		15 min
5.	Determine logistics and combat health services support requirements	1 hr	
6.	Prepare staff/operations/commander's estimate	3 hrs	
7.	AAR	1 hr	
8.	Preparation of OPLAN/OPORD	1 hr	30 min
9.	Prepare movement plan	1 hr	
10.	Prepare occupation plan	1 hr	
11.	Prepare initial Force Protection Plan and ADC plan	1 hr	
12.	Briefing of OPLAN/OPORD	1 hr	
13.	AAR	1 hr	
14.	Preparation of annexes	1 hr	30 min
15.	Approval of annexes		15 min
16.	Final AAR	1 hr	

Total Time: 16 hrs

NOTE: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit. Annexes can be prepared as part of this STX or can be used as lead-ins to other STXs.

       d.   Pertinent maps and engineer overlays are available for planning.

       e.   The new area of operations may be a field or military operations in urban terrain (MOUT) environment.

       f.   A list of supported higher echelon task organization has been secured and is the basis for projected CSS requirements. Unit augmentation has been determined.

       g.   The higher echelon G4 through a liaison officer has requested detailed logistics data on requirements and distribution systems for supporting the higher echelon's mission.

h.   The defense of the unit area of responsibility will be based on a base cluster concept controlled by the supporting rear operations element.

i.   This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions, including a Level I threat and NBC attack.

6.   Special Situation.

a.   The unit commander is conducting a staff meeting with his key staff members and Battalion commanders:

> "The supported unit will be conducting an ----------- operation within --- hours. The division's mission is -------. The concept of operation is -------- and is estimated to last approximately --- hours. Operations will commence in the vicinity of ---------; the final objective is --------------. The unit mission is to provide logistics support from -------- (grid coordinates) locations. Priority of support is initially to the ----- TBD."

b.   The unit commander issues the following additional instructions:

> "Begin your planning process for developing plans and distribution systems to support this mission. I want a seamless and synchronized flow of materiel and other sustainment resources from the Rear ASG to the maneuver brigades and other supported units with a minimum of double handling of cargo or customer wait time. I want maintenance managers to strictly enforce repair cycle time on all items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. Make maximum use of throughput and trans-load operations down to the customer level. CSSCS systems give us an unprecedented ability to see the battlefield as it unfolds and to anticipate and project requirements, not just react to them. Close coordination with supported command enables us to support throughput of sustainment resources and LOGPAC operations with precision down to distribution and unit logistics release points, or weapons systems level. I want the distribution system in place to establish and maintain asset and intransit visibility of materiel and other sustainment resources in the distribution system. I want to be able to rapidly direct, redirect, cross level, or mass logistics and combat health services support resources at critical points within the area of responsibility. Further information will be disseminated as it is received. Plan to conduct AARs after my commander's estimate has been prepared and after OPORD and annexes have been approved and are ready for distribution. Are there any questions?"

7.   Support Requirements.

a.   Minimum Trainers and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the detail required in evaluating staff estimates, a minimum of one trainer/OCs per staff section is required. If this STX is conducted as part of a unit FTX, the total number of OCs needed is the sum of the number needed for each subordinate unit STX. The trainers/evaluators monitor

and evaluate the accuracy of the estimates, the soundness of recommendations, and the thoroughness of coordination.

      b.   Opposing Force:

            (1)   OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

            (2)   OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

            (3)   MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the unit.

      c.   Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the HQ, unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle, and radio are needed for the OCs.

      d.   Maneuver Area. Not required when this STX is used as a CPX.

      e.   Master Incident List (MIL). During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive HQ, unit actions. MIL items should be inputted using the appropriate communications and information systems.

      f.   Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum requirements for each subordinate unit participating in the exercise.

8.   T&EO Sequence. Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

**Table 4-7. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 10-6-0011,
Plan Petroleum and Water Support Operations**

Task	Task Number
Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates	10-6-0200
Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations	10-6-0201
Receive the Mission	63-6-4000
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-6-4001
Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques	63-6-4002
Develop Feasible Courses of Action	63-6-4003
Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation	63-6-4004
Analyze Feasible Courses of Action	63-6-4005
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order	63-6-4006
Prepare Annexes, Appendices, Enclosures, Tabs, Additions and Overlays	63-6-4007
Develop Road Movement Order	63-6-4009
Develop Occupation Plan	63-6-4010
Plan Area Tactical Operations	63-6-4011
Provide Assistance for Planning Logistics and Combat Health Services Support	63-6-4012
Plan Rear Operations	63-6-4013
Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan	63-6-4022
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

**HEADQUARTERS, AREA SUPPORT GROUP
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE GROUP LEVEL RELOCATION
STX 63-6-E0003**

1.   **Objective.** This STX is designed to train the unit staff and other key leaders in planning and coordinating the movement of subordinate elements and sustainment resources to new operating sites. The staff must become proficient in determining movement priority and support requirements. It must become proficient in coordinating and directing reconnaissance/quartering/advance party operations, selecting routes, coordinating required logistics support for the move, controlling the movement of subordinate and attached units, and coordinating logistics support for the supported higher echelon while moving. This STX combines the elements of command and control, column formations, movement control, situational awareness, communications, and force protection activities necessary to supervise the relocation of subordinate elements' bases and sustainment resources to a new operating area.

2.   **Interface.**

        a.   This STX supports the unit level FTX – Provide Theater-Level Area Logistics Support.

        b.   The STX can be used to plan and implement movement of the unit and subordinate elements' bases and facilities as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding company STX should be trained prior to the unit exercise.

3.   **Training.**

        a.   Leader Training.

                (1)   During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP should be discussed. The T&EOs listed in this STX and FMs 5-36, 55-1, 63-2-2, 55-30, 101-5, and 105-1 should also be reviewed.

                (2)   Leaders should use a map of the location where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible. A MAPEX assists in terrain analysis, route selection, selection of operating areas, and the determination of potential OPFOR points of attack.

                (3)   A CPX can be conducted in garrison or at a field site. This exercise facilitates communications setup to include establishment of digital links, correct communications procedures, and use of the TSOP. It also provides training in determining movement requirements, as well as coordinating and controlling the move.

(4)   A TEWT can be conducted at a field site. Leader representatives from subordinate and attached units should participate. This exercise should emphasize terrain analysis, staff coordination, route selection, leadership procedures, and movement planning as part of a leader's professional development.

(5)   Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They are also used to exercise command and control at various command and staff levels.

(6)   Situational awareness should be maintained throughout this STX using the available communications and information systems.

(7)   Tips for leader training.

(a)   Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing movement and preparing movement annexes/orders (FMs 55-30, 101-5, and 101-5-1).

(b)   The theater and unit Tactical/Field SOPs should be reviewed.

(c)   A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where movement and establishment will be performed.

(d)   The senior leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the unit commander or XO with this STX are: conduct mission analysis, issue planning guidance, establish priorities for movement, approve movement order/annex, and supervise staff operations.

b.   Tips for Training.

(1)   After the unit demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-8 and leaders have been trained in the leader tasks, this STX, can be trained under several options.

(a)   With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(b)   With or without NBC conditions.

(c)   Movement of specified elements only.

(d)   Elements moving over a single or multiple routes.

(e)   Movement by road or cross-country.

(f)   Support or nonsupport of higher echelon units on the move.

(2)   The staff must become proficient in the doctrine and TTP for establishing situational awareness during movement, planning for higher echelon support during the move, and in the doctrine and TTP of planning and coordinating the movement of subordinate elements before attempting more complex options.

(3)   After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(4)   When using an OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainers must set out specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective of placing maximum stress on the unit. OPFOR will not be employed unless this STX is used as part of an FTX.

4.   Training Enhancers

a.   The commander determines movement priorities based upon the higher commander's guidance, type of operations, or based upon his own judgment. The enemy operations are based upon his judgment or input from the higher echelon staff. The enemy situation will affect the security requirements.

b.   The staff sections plan the move, and prepare the movement order/annex. The S2/S3 Section leads this task with input from other staff sections.

c.   Staff recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d.   All reports should be submitted in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e.   The unit should be able to relocate at least every 6 days as a standard capability.

f.   In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used in the AAR:

(1)   Did the movement plan conform to the commander's guidance?

(2)   Did the staff properly react to all deviations from the movement order?

(3)   Did the subordinate units implement the movement plan properly?

g.   Deficiencies identified in (1) (2) above can be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (3) above are subordinate unit weaknesses. If the plan is

satisfactory, but the unit execution is poor, then, more frequent moves during FTXs or group-level STXs are required.

h.   This exercise begins with the assignment of responsibility for the movement annex and ends when the last unit element has crossed the RP. AAR is conducted after preparation of the movement annex and after the last subordinate unit crosses the RP. This table includes a suggested scenario.

Table 4-8. Headquarters, Petroleum Group STX 63-6-E0003, Supervise Group Level Relocation

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	
1.	Receive warning order		15 min
2.	Determine movement support requirements	1 hr	30 min
3.	Conduct reconnaissance of new area	1 hr	
4.	Brief unit commander	1 hr	
5.	Prepare road movement order	1 hr	
6.	AAR	1 hr	
7.	Coordinate road march(s)		10 min
8.	React to NBC contamination	1 hr	
9.	OPFOR activity	1 hr	
10.	AAR	1 hr	
11.	Monitor units crossing the RP		30 min
12.	Brief unit commander		30 min
13.	Final AAR	1 hr	

Total Time: 10 hrs 55 min

NOTE: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time needed to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit staff.

---

5.   General Situation

a.   The unit is deployed in a combat zone. The unit mission is to provide logistics support to the supported higher echelon units and attached elements. After receiving guidance from the Theater commander, the unit commander determines that he cannot support the supported higher echelon commander's intent or the scheme of maneuver from current positions. He has decided to relocate subordinate elements' bases and facilities to a new operating area.

b.   Pertinent maps and engineer overlays are available.

c. Route reconnaissance is performed by the subordinate units.

d. The OPFOR is capable of launching air attacks, indirect conventional fires, employing weapons of mass destruction, and engaging in electronic warfare.

e. Major deviations from the movement order occur.

f. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. FRAGO.

a. The unit commander is conducting a staff meeting. The following guidance is given to the staff:

"The unit will move to the vicinity of ------ (grid coordinates) and establish subordinate elements and facilities to support supported tactical operations. The unit must cross the start point (SP) NLT ----- (DTG) and the release point (RP) NLT ----- (DTG). Conduct route reconnaissance, select routes, organize units for move, and prepare movement annex/order, to be published, NLT -----. We will provide continuous logistics support to higher echelon and attached units through situational awareness and responsiveness to divisional requirements during the move. Maintain communications with theater, the rear ASG, subordinate BSBs and the supported units as we move. The enemy has the capability to interdict our unit convoy movements along the entire main supply route. Maintain march discipline and proper distance between unit convoys and serials. Use MTS systems to maintain situational awareness and control movement of subordinate and attached units throughout the relocation. I want all units to be prepared for ambush, and to report to this headquarters using digital communications, enemy activity or any other activity that impedes the progress of our subordinate unit convoys. Uniform for subordinate and attached units is MOPP2. The higher echelon G3 states contaminated area on current route of march vicinity ------. Reroute all units at checkpoint --- to the alternate MSR and have them report in upon closure at the new location."

b. The unit commander issues the following instructions:

"Begin your planning process. Plan to conduct AARs after the movement order is prepared, after OPFOR activity, and after the last subordinate unit crosses the RP. Are there any questions?"

7. Support Requirements

a. Minimum Trainers or OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. If this STX is conducted for only for the headquarters unit staff, a maximum of four OCs is needed. If it is conducted as part of an FTX, the total numbers of OCs needed is the sum of those needed for each subordinate STX.

b.   Opposing Force:

(1)   OPFOR is not required when the exercise is conducted as part of a staff STX. A threat force should be used if it is part of an FTX.

(2)   OPFOR should be well trained in threat tactics, have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3)   The MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the unit.

c.   Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and digital communications are needed for the OC. The senior trainer or OC will require communications for providing input from the MIL.

d.   Maneuver Area. Not required if this STX is conducted as a staff STX. If conducted as part of a unit FTX, a training area is required that can support the number of vehicles, equipment, and operational areas in the unit area of responsibility. A minimum of 20 by 20 kilometers should be considered. Vehicles should be spaced a minimum of 25 meters apart. Vegetation and terrain should allow for cover and concealment of facilities, vehicles, and equipment. Light and noise discipline should be followed within specified safety constraints.

e.   Master Incident List (MIL). During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive DISCOM staff actions. MIL items should be inputted using appropriate communications and information systems.

f.   Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the total requirements for each subordinate unit.

8.   T&EO Sequence. Table 4-9 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-9. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX 63-6-E0003, Supervise Group Level Relocation

Task	Task Number
Develop Road Movement Order	63-6-4009
Develop Occupation Plan	63-6-4010
Supervise Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-6-4014
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-6-4017
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Coordinate Transportation Support	63-6-4030
Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-6-4037
Maintain Communications	63-6-4038
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

HEADQUARTERS, AREA SUPPORT GROUP
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE GROUP LEVEL AREA ESTABLISHMENT
STX 63-6-E0004

1.   Objective. This STX is designed to train the unit staff and other key leaders in planning, coordinating, and supervising the establishment of subordinate elements' bases and facilities in support of tactical operations. The staff must become proficient in planning the occupation of a new area; rapidly establishing its critical logistics support facilities and sustainment resources; establishing and maintaining situational awareness and communications with subordinate, supported, adjacent and higher headquarters; coordinating force protection activities; employing OPSEC measures; and preparing rear operations plans. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and supervisory functions necessary to occupy the unit area of responsibility.

2.   Interface.

        a.   This STX supports the unit FTX: Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations.

        b.   This STX can be used to plan and implement the establishment of subordinate elements' bases and facilities as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding battalion or company STX should be trained prior to the unit exercise.

3.   Training.

        a.   Leader Training.

                (1)   During classroom activities, the TSOP and procedures outlined in FMs 63-2-2, 71-100, 90-14, and 100-10 should be discussed. The T&EOs listed in this STX should also be reviewed.

                (2)   A MAPEX, when used, should be combined with a sand table exercise. If possible, a map of the location where the STX will be conducted, as well as a sand table model depicting the actual terrain should be used. The MAPEX emphasizes terrain analysis, staff coordination, selection of unit defensive positions, selection of operating areas, and OPFOR points of attack.

                (3)   Games and simulations are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They also are used to exercise command and control at various command and staff levels.

(4)   A CPX can be conducted in garrison or at a field site. This exercise facilitates the set up of Logistics Operations Center communications procedures; improve staff coordination procedures, and trains staff in the use of the TSOP.

(5)   A communications and situational awareness exercise can be conducted in garrison or at a field site and is used to establish analog and digital communications operations and procedures to establish a common, relevant picture and to use correct communications procedures.

(6)   A TEWT can be conducted at a field site. Leader representatives from subordinate and attached units should participate. The exercise should emphasize establishment of a common, relevant picture, terrain analysis, staff coordination, site selection, leadership procedures, and defense planning and coordination as part of a unit leaders' professional development program.

(7)   Tips for leader training.

(a)   Leaders should familiarize themselves with the doctrinal procedures for planning and establishing unit bases, rear operations planning, and communications.

(b)   The theater and unit Tactical/Field SOPs should be reviewed.

(c)   A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where the establishment of the unit area of responsibility will be performed.

(d)   The leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (unit commander or XO) are conduct mission analysis, provide planning guidance, approve unit layout and rear operations plan, and supervise the activities of the staff.

b.   Tips for Training.

(1)   After the unit demonstrates proficiency in the tasks in Table 4-10 and the leaders have been trained in the leader tasks, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a)   With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(b)   With or without NBC conditions.

(c)   In a field or MOUT environment.

(d)   Day or night.

(2)   The staff must become proficient in the doctrine and TTP of planning and supervising the establishment of subordinate elements and facilities before attempting complex options.

(3)   After proficiency in this STXis reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(4)   When using OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainer must set up specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective of placing maximum stress on the unit. OPFOR will not be employed unless this STX is used as part of an FTX.

4.   Training Enhancers

a.   The unit commander completes mission analysis, issues planning guidance, and selects defensive tactical options based upon the higher echelon commander's guidance or based upon his own judgment. The type of operations determines the degree of permanency of the facility. The enemy situation will affect security requirements. The unit must be prepared at all times to coordinate defense against air, ground, or terrorist attacks during daylight or darkness, and to respond appropriately to enemy or friendly NBC operations.

b.   The staff sections develop occupation and rear operations plans and supervise implementation. The S2/S3 is the proponent for these supporting missions with input from other staff sections. He establishes the new operating site IAW the unit commander and supported unit's operational plans. When the site is operational, the supported higher echelon G4 is notified the unit is prepared to perform its operational mission.

c.   Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d.   In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used:

(1)   Did the occupation plan conform to the commander's guidance?

(2)   Did subordinate and attached units implement the occupation plan properly?

e.   Deficiencies identified in (1) above can be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are unit subordinate unit weaknesses. If the plan is satisfactory, but unit subordinate unit execution is poor, then, more frequent establishments during FTX or battalion-level STX are required.

f.   This exercise begins when the unit advance/quartering party arrives at the new site and ends when the unit area of responsibility is established. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-10. This table includes a suggested scenario.

Table 4-10. Headquarters, Area Support Group STX 63-6-E0004, Supervise Group Level Area Establishment		
EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
1.	Occupy new area of operations	1 hr
2.	Formulate tentative layout plan	1 hr
3.	AAR	1 hr
4.	Set up the LOC	2 hrs
5.	Set up administrative and bivouac areas	2 hrs
6.	*Supervise establishment of subordinate elements' bases and facilities	2 hrs
7.	Final AAR	1 hr
	Total Time: 8 hrs	

NOTE: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time needed to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit staff.

* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

5.   General Situation

a.   The unit is deployed in a combat zone. The unit mission is to provide logistics support in support of tactical operations.

b.   Maps of the new area of operations (AO), DSA layout plan, and an NBC vulnerability analysis are available.

c.   The new AO may be in a field or MOUT environment.

d.   The HQ, unit advance/quartering party has prepared the site.

e.   Subordinate units and attached elements have arrived at the new AO and are ready to establish facilities in support of higher echelon's offensive, defensive, or static operations. Subordinate units are prepared to defend at any time during unit establishment.

f.   The location of the CP and LOC has been identified.

g.   Communications requirements have been determined and the communications plan is available.

6.   FRAGO

a.   The unit commander is conducting a staff meeting. The following guidance is given to the staff:

> "We will support the higher echelon from our new location for at least ----- days. The enemy is capable of mounting aerial and ground attacks against our units, facilities, and sustainment resources. I want both the tactical and logistics sides of the Operations Center fully operational, followed by administrative and bivouac areas. Communications Branch, I want analog and digital communications in place with theater, rear ASG, subordinate Base Support Battalions, and supported higher echelon G3 and G4. I want to begin establishing the distribution system to support tactical operations. Because of the enemy's capability to attack, and the higher echelon's requirements for continuous logistics support, we must maintain OPSEC measures, establish force protection measures, and support higher echelon tactical operations."

b.   The unit commander issues the additional following instructions.

> "Staff sections, I want you to set up operations IAW the tentative layout and communications plan. XO and Plans and Ops Branch Chief, I want you to monitor the placement of our subordinate and attached units in the corps and division areas and to formulate final layout and force protection plans. Ensure our facilities take advantage of cover and concealment, enforce strict noise and light discipline, and identify likely enemy avenues of approach. Get OPs/LPs far enough out to give adequate warning. Support Operations, begin locking, loading, and linking the following locations into the distribution system: EAD facilities and sustainment resources; and corps and divisional units operating in the corps rear. I want to establish and maintain asset and intransit visibility of sustainment resources flowing in and out of the division. I want to be able to predict rather than react to requirements and be able to rapidly direct, redirect, cross-level, or mass logistics and combat health services resources at critical points within the division area of responsibility. This exercise ends when the unit area of responsibility has been established. Plan to conduct an AAR after we have formulated the layout plan and another after the unit has been set up. Are there any questions?"

7.   Support Requirements

a.   Minimum Trainer and Evaluators. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander or XO as the senior internal evaluator. If the STX is conducted for the unit headquarters staff, then a maximum of five OCs is needed. If this STX is conducted as part of a unit FTX, the required evaluators should be the sum of evaluators of each subordinate unit STX.

b. Opposing Force:

(1) The OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a STX. The OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of a unit FTX.

(2) OPFOR should be well trained in threat tactics, have specific missions, and be controlled when used.

(3) The MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the DISCOM.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle, and digital communications are needed for the OC. The senior trainer or OC will require digital communications for providing input from the MIL.

d. Maneuver Area. Not required if this exercise is conducted as a staff STX. If conducted as part of a unit FTX, a training area of sufficient size to support the number of vehicles and equipment in a tentative unit AO is required. Vehicles should be spaced a minimum of 25 meters apart. Vegetation and terrain should allow for cover and concealment of facilities, vehicles, and equipment.

e. Master Incident List (MIL). During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive staff actions. MIL items should be inputted using the appropriate communications and information systems.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-11 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-11. T & EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX 63-6-E0004, Supervise Group Level Area Establishment

Task	Task Number
Establish Command Post (Forward)	63-6-4015
Establish Communications	63-6-4016
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters	63-6-4018
Establish Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas	63-6-4019
Supervise Support Operations Sub-Elements Functions	63-6-4021
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-6-4037
Maintain Communications	63-6-4038
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

**HEADQUARTERS, AREA SUPPORT GROUP
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
DIRECT PETROLEUM AND WATER SUPPORT OPERATIONS
STX 10-6-0013**

1.   Objective. This STX is designed to train the unit staff and other key members in establishing situational awareness, logistics requirements determination, coordinating with external organizations, planning, coordinating and directing subordinate units in support of tactical operations and command and control of subordinate units. The staff must become proficient in planning, coordinating, and directing logistics support operations; providing intelligence; supervising the unit OPSEC program and NBC defense operations, and providing personnel services support, administrative services support and religious support. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and directing those actions necessary to provide logistics support to tactical operations.

2.   Interface

        a.   This STX is supported by subordinate unit STXs - as it relates to their specific logistics or combat health services support mission.

        b.   This STX supports the unit FTX - Provide Theater-Level Area Logistics Support.

        c.   This STX can be used to plan, coordinate, and provide command and control of logistics support operations. In addition, this STX can be used to drive distribution systems during tactical operations as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding battalion-level STX should be trained prior to the unit exercise.

3.   Training

        a.   Leader Training.

            (1)   During classroom activities, the TSOP and procedures outlined in FMs 8-15, 9-6, 9-43-1, 9-43-2, 54-30, 55-1, 63-3, 71-100, and 100-10 should be reviewed. The T&EOs listed in this STX should also be reviewed.

            (2)   A MAPEX, when used, should be combined with a sand table exercise. If possible, a MAPEX of the location where the STX will be conducted and a sand table model depicting the actual terrain should be used. The MAPEX emphasizes terrain analysis, staff coordination, selection of unit defensive positions, selection of operating areas, and OPFOR avenues of approach.

(3)   Games and simulations are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They also are used to exercise command and control at various command and staff levels.

(4)   A CPX can be conducted in garrison or at a field site. This exercise allows units to practice the set up of analog and digital communications, as well as the proper use of communications procedures. A CPX also improves staff coordination procedures and trains staff in the use of the TSOP.

(5)   A Communications Exercise (COMEX)/Situational Awareness Exercise is used to practice battle command information procedures and operations, and logistics and combat health services support operations. Units practice their mission tasks using appropriate automation systems, to include Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS), and other battlefield functional area control systems (BFACS) and logistics and medical standard army management information systems (STAMIS). The HQ, unit should practice continuity of operations (COOP) techniques and procedures in order to develop manual procedures for use in the event of automation failure or disruption due to enemy action.

(6)   CSSCS provides a concise picture of unit requirements and support capabilities by collecting, processing, and displaying information on key items of supply, services, and personnel that the commander deems crucial to the success of an operation. CSSCS supports the decision making process with course of action (COA) analysis. The staff can analyze up to three COAs for a 5-day period. Variables include combat posture, task organization, miles traveled, and geographical region.

(7)   A TEWT can be conducted at a field site. Leader representatives from subordinate and attached units should participate. The exercise should emphasize terrain analysis, staff coordination, site selection, leadership procedures, and defense planning and coordination as part of a unit leaders' professional development program.

(8)   Tips for leader training.

(a)   Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for the following tasks: coordinating logistics and combat health services support requirements; movement control procedures; providing internal logistics and combat health services support to unit subordinate and attached units; and using and maintaining digitally generated and manual status reports. FMs 1-500, 8-15, 9-6, 9-43-1, 54-30, 55-10, and 63-2, 63-3 should also be reviewed.

(b)   The theater and unit TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c)   A personal reconnaissance should be conducted of the training area where the logistics support operations would be performed, if possible.

(d)   The following leader tasks must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (unit commander or XO) with this STX: command and control of subordinate and attached units; supervision of staff functions; establishment of logistics priorities based on tactical requirements; and approval of staff recommendations on unresolved logistics support requirements.

b.   Tips for Training.

(1)   After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the unit tasks and leaders have been trained in the leader tasks, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a)   In a field or MOUT environment.

(b)   With or without NBC conditions.

(c)   Day or night.

(d)   With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(e)   Offensive, defensive, or retrograde operations.

(2)   The staff must become proficient in the basics of planning and coordinating unit internal and external logistics requirements before attempting more complex options.

(3)   In giving his guidance and possible courses of action, the unit commander should offer variations. Some variations are listed below.

(a)   Secure local area terrain features that could adversely affect the support mission.

(b)   Support multinational component.

(c)   Use contractors on the battlefield.

(d)   Decrease the size of the staff.

(e)   Apply automation constraints.

(4)   After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(5)   When using OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainer must set up specific

OPFOR tasks with an overall objective to include counter-tasks for the OPFOR. OPFOR will not be employed unless this STX is used as part of an FTX.

4.   Training Enhancers

a.   The commander issues planning guidance, establishes logistics and combat health services support priorities, and selects logistics support options based on the Theater commander's guidance or based upon his own judgment.

b.   Staff recommendations, reports, and correspondence are submitted in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

c.   The Support Operations Officer, in conjunction with the higher echelon G4, develop the support plan. The theater Distribution Managers maintains asset and intransit visibility of sustainment resources in and out bound to the theater. The Distribution Management personnel also direct or redirects the flow of sustainment resources based on METT-TC or command guidance. The unit staff and functional commodity and service managers implement the plan and monitor its progress.

d.   In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used:

(1)   Did the unit staff coordinate higher echelon and attached unit logistics support based on the commander's guidance?

(2)   Did subordinate and attached units respond correctly to unit staff direction?

e.   Deficiencies identified in (1) above can be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are unit subordinate unit weaknesses. If the coordination is satisfactory but the unit subordinate unit execution is poor, then more frequent performances of support missions during FTX or battalion-level STX are required.

f.   When this STX is conducted with only the headquarters unit participating, leader representatives from supported, subordinate, and attached units should participate to generate logistics support requirements.

g.   This exercise begins with the receipt of planning guidance and logistics services support requirements, and ends when a Threat Level II/III condition is reached. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-12. This table includes a suggested scenario.

**Table 4-12. Headquarters, Area Support Group STX 10-6-0013,
Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations**

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	
1.	Receive planning guidance	1 hr	
2.	Determine assets and requirements	1 hr	
3.	Develop staff input	1 hr	
4.	AAR	1 hr	
5.	Develop tentative external support plan	2 hrs	
6.	Brief unit commander		30 min
7.	Disseminate plan		30 min
8.	AAR	1 hr	
9.	Develop internal support plan	2 hrs	
10.	*Monitor implementation of plan	1 hr	
11.	Coordinate staff operations	1 hr	
12.	*Coordinate external logistics support operations	1 hr	
13.	*Coordinate internal logistics support plan	1 hr	
14.	OPFOR sighted		10 min
15.	Support degradation occurs	1 hr	
16.	Priority logistics support is maintained	1 hr	
17.	Level II/III Threat is reached		30 min
18.	Final AAR	1 hr	

Total Time: 13 hrs 40 min

NOTE: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit staff.

* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously.

---

5.   General Situation

a.   The unit is deployed in a combat zone. The unit mission is to provide logistics support to a theater unit and attached elements. The higher echelon OPORD and annexes have been analyzed.

b.   The unit commander, staff, and key leaders are assembled to begin planning. The unit HQ has been established. Unit elements are grouped into bases and base clusters for mutual support.   Security measures are in effect.

c.   Logistics support requirements are generated by supported units. Theater logistics support units are on the ground and operational.

d.   Intelligence information on the tactical situation is disseminated from the theater G2 to the unit Plans and Ops branch. OPSEC and physical security measures have been implemented by the unit.

f.   The OPFOR may be in the form of conventional or unconventional forces. The OPFOR has the capability of intelligence gathering and of making both overt and covert attacks, to include use of weapons of mass destruction. The OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. Local security is maintained by the use of OPSEC countermeasure techniques.

g.   The HQ, unit mission may be performed in a field or MOUT environment.

h.   Casualties, transfers of personnel, and EPW have caused personnel adjustments within the unit.

6.   FRAGO.

a.   The commander issues the following guidance:

"The unit will conduct tactical operations from current locations for the next ---- days. Priority of support is initially to the --------- TBA. Stay abreast of unit support requirements, as well as the capabilities and distribution systems at echelons above division supporting us. Continue to coordinate closely with the theater, rear ASG, subordinate Base Support Battalions, and supported unit on logistics support requirements. I want to maintain a constant and common, relevant picture of the tactical and logistical posture, to include asset and intransit visibility of materiel and other sustainment resources flowing into and out of the AO. I want timely flow of materiel and other sustainment resources to the maneuver units, minimizing double handling of cargo and customer wait time. I want maintenance managers to strictly supervise repair cycle time on all items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. Make maximum use of throughput and trans-load operations down to customer unit level. CSSCS give us an unprecedented ability to see the battlefield as it unfolds, and to both anticipate and project requirements, not just react to them. Close coordination with supported command's CSS operators should enable us to support LOGPAC operations with precision down to customer LRP and weapons system level. I want to be able to direct, redirect, cross-level, or mass logistics support resources at critical points within the unit area of responsibility. Continue to seek ways to maximize distribution of sustainment resources to supported units. Keep me updated on the status of support and report to me problems you cannot resolve or breaks in the distribution pipeline."

b.   The commander issues the following additional instructions:

> "Begin planning to support this mission. I will disseminate additional information as it is received. Plan to conduct AARs after you've developed the support plan and after the plan has been disseminated. A final AAR will be conducted after threat Level II/III is reached. Are there any questions?"

7.   Support Requirements

a.   Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander or XO as the senior internal evaluator. If the STX is conducted for the unit headquarters staff, then one evaluator per staff section is required. If the STX is conducted as part of a unit FTX, the required evaluators should include the sum of evaluators of each subordinate unit STX.

b.   Opposing Force:

(1)   The OPFOR is not required when the exercise is conducted as a staff STX. OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of a unit FTX.

(2)   OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3)   MILES can be used, or the controllers can assess damage to the subordinate units of the unit.

c.   Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the headquarters are used. When OPFOR are employed, a vehicle and digital communications for the evaluator/controller are needed. The senior trainer or OC will require digital communications to provide input from the MIL.

d.   Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size is required to support the number of vehicles and equipment in a tentative area of responsibility. Vehicles should be spaced a minimum of 25 meters apart. Vegetation and terrain should allow for cover and concealment of facilities, vehicles, and equipment.

e.   Master Incident List (MIL). During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive staff actions. MIL items should be inputted using the appropriate communications and information systems.

f.   Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8.   T&EO Sequence. Table 4-13 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

**Table 4-13. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX 10-6-0013,
Direct Petroleum and Water Support Operations**

Task	Task Number
Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations	10-6-0202
Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs	10-6-0203
Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities	10-6-0206
Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support	10-6-4062
Operate the Logistics and Combat Health Services Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (LOC)	63-6-4020
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Coordinate Combat Health Services Support	63-6-4029
Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination	63-6-4032
Operate the Tactical Support Area of the LOC	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-6-4041
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Provide Automation Support	63-6-4043
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-6-4050
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

HEADQUARTERS, AREA SUPPORT GROUP
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
COORDINATE GROUP LEVEL FORCE PROTECTION
STX 63-6-E0007

1.   Objective. This STX provides the unit staff and key leaders practice in planning, coordinating, and providing command and control of force protection measures to defend unit bases and sustainment resources. The staff must become proficient in analyzing the threat, planning and coordinating rear operations, coordinating responses to threat activities, assessing damage, coordinating close air support (CAS), fire support, military police, tactical combat force support, and coordinating ADC operations. This STX combines the elements of planning, controlling, coordinating, and directing procedures necessary to defend unit bases and sustainment resources.

2.   Interface

      a.   This STX supports the unit FTX – Direct Petroleum and Water Support.

      b.   This STX supports the Battalion STX - Supervise Battalion Level Force Protection.

      c.   This STX is supported by the Company-level STX - Defend Assigned Area.

3.   Training

      a.   Leader Training.

      (1)   This STX can be used to plan, coordinate, and implement force protection activities as a part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate units, the corresponding battalion STX should be trained prior to the unit exercise.

      (2)   During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 54-30, 71-100, and 90-14 should be discussed. The T&EOs listed in this STX should also be reviewed.

      (3)   The leader should use a map of the location where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model depicting the actual terrain, if possible.

      (4)   CPXs, CFXs, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact location of the STXs is used.

      (5)   Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(6)   Situational awareness should be maintained throughout this STX using the real time capability of Battlefield Functional Area Control System architecture.

(7)   Tips for leader training.

(a)   Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing rear operations.

(b)   Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where rear operations will take place.

(c)   Leaders should review the unit and higher echelon rear operations SOPs and OPORD.

(d)   The leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (unit commander or XO) with this STX are: conduct mission analysis, restate the mission, issue planning guidance, supervise staff operations, deploy the Tactical Combat Force, recommend deployment of the tactical combat force or MP unit, approve repositioning of subordinate element defensive positions, and establish unit restoration priorities.

b.   Tips for Training.

(1)   After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a)   Simultaneous threats.

(b)   With or without NBC conditions.

(c)   Day or night.

(2)   The staff must become proficient in planning, coordinating, and executing rear operations and ADC before attempting more complex options.

(3)   After proficiency in this STX is reached, the staff sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(4)   When using OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainer must set up specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective of placing maximum stress upon the unit staff.

4.   Training Enhancers

a.   The commander completes mission analysis, issues planning guidance, restates the mission, and selects tactical defensive options based upon the higher echelon's commander's guidance or based upon his judgment. Intelligence reports disseminated using the appropriate BFACS influence rear operations planning.

b.   Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

c.   Rear operations limitations and assumptions include:

(1)   Lack of unit mobility impedes the ability of sustainment bases to rapidly shift locations.

(2)   The lack of heavy weapons prevents the unit from decisively engaging and defeating a major enemy ground attack. Listening/observation posts must be located far enough forward of base perimeters to give early warning. The internal response force should be committed as soon as the primary threat avenue is identified.

(3)   Failing early notification, the defense should prevent penetration of subordinate elements and bases by committing the internal response force or shifting personnel from unengaged sectors of the perimeter.

(4)   Once the OPFOR has achieved penetration of the sustainment base, rally points within each company and battalion area should be established to allow commanders to regain control over their elements for the purpose of reestablishing organizational integrity prior to counterattack to regain lost ground. Upon arrival of the TCF or MP units, the base commander will hand over responsibility for counterattack to the commander of the TCF or MP unit. The base commander will place base personnel under operational control of the counterattacking force for the purpose of regaining control of bases and facilities. Upon successful completion of the counterattack or instructions from the commander, TCF, or MP unit, base personnel will revert to their original mission and command and control structure.

d.   These assumptions are based on the fact that when the enemy knows what type of units (CSS and CS) are grouped together, and where those units are located, the units will become a prime target for threat weaponry.

e.   Military Police will be committed as a response force against a Level II threat and will be controlled by the rear command post operations center. The unit and MP response forces will drive the OPFOR out of the area. Threat forces exceeding the capability of MP forces will be handed over to a tactical combat force.

   f. The survival of the unit and the higher echelon itself is dependent upon the survival of the unit. High-risk measures in defense of the unit are justified and may be required in order to preserve unit bases and sustainment resources. These required measures include:

     (1) Total commitment of personnel to the defense until additional combat forces can be brought to bear.

     (2) Commitment of all available combat/combat support weaponry (including those in repair or stock) to preserve unit bases and sustainment resources.

   g. There is no justification for abandonment of the unit and its sustainment resources regardless of enemy pressure. Contingency materiel and equipment destruction plans should be developed and implemented on order.

   h. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used:

     (1) Did the force protection plan and ADC plan conform to the commander's guidance?

     (2) Did the subordinate units properly implement the force protection and ADC plans?

   i. Deficiencies identified in (1) above can be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are unit weaknesses. If the plan is satisfactory but the unit execution is poor, then more frequent performances of defense missions should be conducted during FTX or battalion and company level STX.

   j. This exercise begins with a Level II/III threat and ends once restoration of subordinate elements and facilities are completed. AARs are conducted after completion of ADC activities and after restoration operations. Table 4-16 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-16. Headquarters, Area Support Group STX 63-6-E0007, Coordinate Group Level Force Protection

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	
1.	Receive planning guidance		10 min
2.	Analyze the threat		40 min
3.	Determine assets and requirements	1 hr	
4.	Develop defense plan		20 min
5.	Develop ADC plan		30 min
6.	AAR	1 hr	
7.	Brief the commander		30 min
8.	Disseminate plan		30 min
9.	OPFOR spotted		15 min
10.	Determine response		30 min
11.	Coordinate tactical support	1 hr	
12.	Level II attack		30 min
13.	MP response force arrives		30 min
14.	Conduct reorganization activities	2 hrs	
15.	AAR	1 hr	
16.	Level III attack		30 min
17.	Upgrade defenses	1 hr	
18.	Shift response forces		15 min
19.	Unit elements OPCON to TCF	1 hr	
20.	Damage assessment	2 hrs	
21.	Conduct restoration operations	1 hr	
22.	Continue logistics support mission	1 hr	
23.	Final AAR	1 hr	

Total Time 18 hrs 10 min

NOTE: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary basedon METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit staff.

5.   General Situation

a.   The unit is forward deployed in a combat zone. The unit mission is to provide logistics support to the Theater, Corps and attached elements. The brigades are in contact with enemy forces and the enemy has either infiltrated or air dropped platoon size (+) or larger forces to seek out and destroy or disrupt command and control centers and support elements, and to interdict the MSR. A Level II or III threat condition is reached.

b.   The unit has the responsibility for the defense of unit bases and sustainment resources. The unit commander is responsible for the defense against Level I and limited Level II attacks. Level II/III attacks are handed over to MP forces or a tactical combat force.

c.   The supporting rear operations element is collocated with the unit headquarters.

d.   The unit area has experienced heavy damage to bases and facilities. Control assessment teams have been designated. The unit commander has established priorities for ADC.

6.   FRAGO

a.   The unit commander is conducting a staff meeting where he provides the following information and guidance:

> "The higher G2 has reported company sized enemy units have been spotted in the vicinity of ---------, moving ---------- (direction) toward Area Support Group CSS bases. Digital intelligence reports indicate the enemy's objective is the destruction of support units and command and control centers in the unit area and interdiction of the MSR. The enemy has recently used chemical agents in the brigade areas. This is a threat Level II/III attack. Cease logistics operations and have subordinate and attached units execute their base defense plans. Coordinate rear area protection with supported rear operations element. Alert the MP and TCF forces. Make maximum use of available indirect fire support and CAS if available to disrupt these attacks before they come in contact with our perimeter."

b.   The unit commander issues the following instructions to the staff:

> "This exercise ends when the subordinate elements' bases and facilities return to normal operational status. You should conduct an ARR after the defense and ADC tasks are completed and after reorganization. A final AAR will be conducted after restoration activities have been completed. Are there any questions?"

7.   Support Requirements

a.   Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. If the STX is conducted for the unit staff, one OC per staff section is required. If the STX is conducted as part of an FTX, the required evaluators should be the sum of all subordinate elements STXs. Each OPFOR platoon should have one controller/evaluator to control activity, assess damage and casualties, and evaluate tactics and techniques of unit personnel. An

additional evaluator should accompany each response element and have similar responsibilities.

b.   Opposing Force. An OPFOR platoon (+) or company is required for the exercise for Level III activities. The OPFOR should be well-trained in patrolling and assault tactics and have specific missions within the unit area. During the conduct of an FTX both mounted and dismounted operations should be executed. The following guidelines assist in assessing damage:

(1)   Any soldier that masks a firing weapon is a casualty.

(2)   Any soldier that remains exposed to OPFOR fire for longer than three consecutive seconds is a casualty.

(3)   Any soldier or vehicle within five meters of a grenade, unless protected by sump or cover is a casualty/destroyed.

(4)   Any vehicle or equipment that OPFOR comes within five meters is destroyed.

c.   Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the HQ, unit are used. The senior trainer or OC will require digital communications for providing input from the MIL. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and communications are needed for the OC. OPFOR OCs will report to the senior trainer.

d.   Maneuver Area. A training area is required sufficient to support the number of vehicles, equipment, and operational areas in a unit.

e.   Master Incident List (MIL). During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit staff actions. MIL items should be inputted using the appropriate BFACS.

f.   Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8.   **T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-17 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

**Table 4-13. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX 63-6-E0007,
Coordinate Group Level Force Protection**

Task	Task Number
Plan Area Tactical Operations	63-6-4011
Plan Rear Operations	63-6-4013
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-6-4023
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations	63-6-4035
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-6-4036
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-6-4037
Maintain Communications	63-6-4038
Conduct Command Religious Support	63-6-4041
Provide Command and Control	63-6-4042
Operate Rear Tactical Operations Center	63-6-4047
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-6-4049
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-6-4050
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326

HEADQUARTERS, AREA SUPPORT GROUP
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE GROUP LEVEL REDEPLOYMENT
STX 63-6-E0008

1.   Objective. This STX trains the unit staff and key leaders in supervising the redeployment of subordinate elements from a theater of operations to home station or a mobilization site. This STX also provides the commander and key leaders and staff with practice in planning, controlling, and coordinating subordinate unit element redeployment activities. The unit must become proficient in planning, preparing, and controlling subordinate units in force projection operations.

2.   Interface

        a.   This STX supports the unit FTX – Direct Petroleum and Water Support.

        b.   This STX is supported by Battalion-level STX - Supervise Battalion Level Redeployment.

        c.   This STX can be used to plan and implement the redeployment of subordinate elements to home station or mobilization site as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding company STX should be trained prior to the HQ, unit exercise.

3.   Training

        a.   Leader Training.

                (1)   This STX can be used to plan and implement redeployment (land, sea, or air) of the unit as a part of an FTX or CPX.

                (2)   During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP; the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-65, and 100-17 series; and ARs 700-84 and 750-1 should be discussed. The T&EO listed in this STX should also be reviewed.

                (3)   The leader should use a map of the location where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model depicting the actual terrain, if possible.

                (4)   Command Post Exercises (CPXs), Command Field Exercises (CFXs), and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders. STXs support such exercises.

                (5)   Simulations and games are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They are also used to exercise command and control at various command and staff levels.

(6)   Tips for leader training.

(a)   Leaders should familiarize themselves with the contingency plans and procedures for planning and executing redeployment operations.

(b)   Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where redeployment training activities will take place.

(c)   Leaders should review the theater and unit redeployment SOPs.

b.   Tips for Training.

(1)   After the HQ, unit demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-18, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a)   Multiple increments.

(b)   Various unit category levels.

(c)   Different modes of transportation.

(d)   Day or night.

(e)   All environmental conditions

(2)   The HQ, unit must become proficient in the basics of planning and executing redeployment activities before attempting more complex options.

(3)   After proficiency in this STX is reached, the HQ, unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4.   Training Enhancers

a.   The commander, in coordination with Headquarters, Theater, secures redeployment guidance, orders, pertinent plans, and SOPs and reviews redeployment contingency plans.

b.   Subordinate units' updates unit redeployment plans in coordination with the unit staff.

c.   The theater G3 provides unit with the redeployment sequence data.

d.   Unless otherwise approved by the senior OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e.	This exercise begins with the receipt of a redeployment warning order and ends when the unit is at home station or mobilization site. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-18. This table includes a suggested scenario.

Table 4-18. Headquarters, Area Support Group STX 63-6-E0008, Supervise Group Level Redeployment

EVENT w45	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
1.	Receive warning order	10 min
2.	*Coordinate reconstitution of unit subordinate and attached units for redeployment	1 hr
3.	Plan unit redeployment	2 hrs
4.	*Coordinate turn in of excess sustainment stock	1 hr
5.	Prepare redeployment movement order/plan	1 hr
6.	Provide redeployment support	1 hr
7.	AAR	1 hr
8.	Coordinate nontactical road marches	1 hr
9.	Coordinate redeployment advance party activities	1 hr
10.	Coordinate APOE/SPOE activities	1 hr
11.	AAR	1 hr
12.	Coordinate APOD/SPOD activities	1 hr
13.	Coordinate nontactical road marches	1 hr
14.	Arrive at home station	1 hr

Total Time: 14 hrs 10 min

NOTE 1: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.

NOTE 2: Some events are accomplished concurrently while others occur in sequence.

* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously.

## 5.	General Situation

a.	The unit is currently forward deployed in a combat zone. Hostilities have ceased. The unit is to be redeployed to CONUS. The unit is under the command and control of Headquarters, Theater.

b. Unit subordinate commanders provide personnel and equipment status reports to staff sections.

c. The MACOM logistics element provides required redeployment support.

d. APOEs, SPOEs, and the CONUS location are identified.

6. FRAGO. The commander issues the following FRAGO:

"We have been alerted to redeploy to home station. We must be prepared to support unit and attached units through their redeployment activity. Security, Plans and Ops Director you have the lead. All units will prepare personnel for redeployment to CONUS by air. Equipment will deploy both by sea and air. I want 100% accountability of personnel and equipment from all subordinate and attached units. Support Operations, I want to be briefed on the disposition of sustainment stocks remaining under the control of unit subordinate units and in the hands of supported echelon and attached units. Ensure excess sustainment stocks are identified and turned in to the appropriate EAD agency. I want a detailed briefing at ----- (time) on our redeployment plan and our plan to retrograde excess sustainment stocks to EAD reclamation sites. Be prepared to move to the RAA/TAA at --------- (grid coordinates) within ------ hours using alternative Route A. I will conduct an AAR after the conclusion of this STX."

7. **Support Requirements**

a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander or unit XO as the senior trainer and primary OC. Because of the detail required in evaluating the details of redeployment, a minimum of one OC per staff section is required. The trainers and OCs monitor and evaluate the accuracy of the data, the soundness of planning and recommendations, and the thoroughness of coordination.

b. Opposing Force:

(1) The OPFOR is not required for this situational training exercise.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to facilities, equipment losses, and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to HQ, unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio for the OCs are required. The senior trainer/OC requires communications to provide input from the MIL.

d.   Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, an adequate training area for setting up operations of approximately 6 by 20 kilometers is desirable. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 20 kilometers.

e.   Master Incident List (MIL). The MIL is essential to provide input to drive staff actions. MIL items should be inputted using the appropriate BFACS.

f.   Consolidated Support Requirements. Unit support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8.   T&EO Sequence. Table 4-19 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-19. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX 63-6-E0008, Supervise Group Level Redeployment

Task	Task Number
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-6-4303
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-6-4326
Supervise Redeployment Activities	63-6-4853
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4854
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-6-4865
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-6-4866
Provide Redeployment Support	63-6-4867
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-6-4868
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-6-4869
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-6-4870
Plan Redeployment	63-6-4874

Chapter 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. Introduction. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.

b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.

d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

e. Commander/Leader Assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U - Untrained. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. Condition. A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task standard.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

l. OPFOR standards. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify <u>what</u> must be accomplished -- not <u>how</u> it

must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Use. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

ARTEP 10-602-MTP

ELEMENTS: Command Section
          S1 Section
          S2/S3 Section
          S4 Section
          Support Operations Section

TASK: Supervise Advance/Quartering Party Activities   (63-6-4014)
     (<u>FM 63-3</u>)   (AR 530-1)   (FM 101-5)
     (FM 3-19.30)   (FM 3-4)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                  (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                  (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Departure time for the advance/quartering party has arrived, and the appointed personnel are prepared to depart the assembly area.   Status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded to the commander's digital device. LPT is available for review. Essential information, including route, order of march, and ETA for the main body has been forwarded to the advance/quartering party leader. The advance/quartering party leader has been issued tentative area and CP layout with traffic circulation and communication plans. The advance/quartering party consists of an OIC, security, staff and communication elements, NBC detection team elements, and representatives from appropriate subordinate elements. Sufficient guides, markers, and other required equipment is available. Advance/quartering party deploys in MOPP2. Proposed area is to be evacuated immediately if high levels of contamination are detected. The task is performed in all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance/quartering party's movement is conducted IAW movement order. All new area preparation tasks as directed by the S2/3 are accomplished IAW TSOP and the OPORD. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase time required to perform advance/quartering party functions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/3 Section organizes advance/quartering party. 　　a. Provides required size of parties to subordinate elements, IAW movement order and TSOP. 　　b. Briefs party leaders IAW the movement order and TSOP. 　　c. Dispatches party as prescribed in the movement order. 　　d. Maintains situational awareness at all times, using status boards, appropriate BFACS, MTS, or radio.		

5 - 5

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

2. Advance/quartering party moves to new operating site.
   a. Crosses SP, checkpoints, and the RP at times prescribed in the movement order.
   b. Follows route prescribed in the movement order.
   c. Reports route changes, intelligence, and any other information to the S2/3 and/or the main body; reports using route guides, route markers, other nonelectronic means, BFACS, or MTS.
   d. Moves advance/quartering party into a concealed, predesignated assembly area to await clearance of new area.
   e. Maintains situational awareness at all times, using appropriate BFACS, MTS, or radio.		

3. Advance/quartering party leader supervises the securing of the new area.
   a. Dispatches security elements to sweep the area to locate mines, booby traps, or signs of threat presence.
   b. Dispatches NBC survey and monitoring teams to sweep assigned sectors.
   c. Places OP on probable avenues of approach consistent with personnel assets.
   d. Conducts area reconnaissance (mounted or dismounted) with subordinate elements' leaders pointing out general locations of each element.
   e. Moves entire element into the new area.
   f. Forwards closing report to main body, if possible, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS.
   g. Maintains situational awareness at all times, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS.		

4. Advance/quartering party secures the new area.
   a. Dons protective mask before entering new area.
   b. Sweeps the area to locate mines, booby traps, or other signs of threat presence (Security elements).
   c. Surveys assigned areas for NBC contamination (Survey and Monitor Teams).
   d. Occupies OPs on probable avenues of approach.
   e. Moves into new area as directed by the party leader.
   f. Maintains situational awareness at all times, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS.		

5. Advance/quartering party leader supervises area preparation. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Monitors movement of each subordinate element's advance/quartering party into their respective area to ensure compliance with layout plan and traffic circulation plans.
c. Supervises implementation of hasty security plan to ensure that each element secures its individual area.
d. Supervises implementation of communications plan in coordination with the staff HQ communications representative(s) to ensure radio communications exists between the CP and all subordinate elements.
e. Enforces OPSEC measures during preparation of subordinate elements' areas.
f. Tasks unit representatives to block all other possible entrance/exit points with available materials.
 	
6. Advance/quartering party implements tentative layout plan.
   a. Marks traffic circulation pattern IAW layout plan.
   b. Establishes entrance/exit points to all subordinate units' locations.
   c. Constructs obstructions to block all other possible entrance and exit points.
 	
7. Advance/quartering party implements hasty security plan.
   a. Prepares hasty defensive sketch, using a map overlay or appropriate BFACS.
   b. Enforces camouflage and concealment measures.
   c. Identifies location for emplacement of emergency alarm devices.
 	
8. Advance/quartering party implements communications plan IAW staff HQ communications representative's directions.
   a. Establishes wire/digital communications between CP and subordinate elements.
   b. Establishes wire/digital communications with higher headquarters.
   c. Employs signal security measures.
   d. Issues passwords as prescribed in the TSOP.
   e. Installs antivirus software as prescribed in the TSOP.
 	
9. Advance/quartering party leader supervises reception of main body.
   a. Identifies guide pickup points.
   b. Briefs ground guides on moving main body into their respective areas with emphasis on OPSEC measures.
   c. Directs dispatching of element guides to the RP.
   d. Monitors subordinate elements' guide activities to ensure compliance with party leader's guidance and TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Enforces surveillance measures.
  f. Provides progress reports to the S2/3 and commander upon arrival of the main body, using appropriate BFACS, radio, wire, or personal contact.
  g. Maintains situational awareness at all times, using status boards, appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASK: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section

TASK: Establish Command Post (Forward)   (63-6-4015)
(<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (FM 3-19.30)   (FM 63-3)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command's advance/ quartering party has secured the new area. The staff sections have assigned personnel to establish the CP (Forward) as part of the advance/quartering party. The unit's TSOP is available and it lists critical tasks to be accomplished by the advance element relating to CP site preparation. The S2/3 Section may provide additional instructions on CP setup, based on METT-TC or commander's guidance. Communications requirements have been determined and requested from the supporting signal element. The headquarters is maintaining communication with higher and lower headquarters during the movement and setup of the new area of operations. Status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents continue to be available to the responsible staff and operations elements. LPT is available for review. Higher and lower TSOPs are available to the advance element. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command and control of operations continues during HQ "jump" to a new location. Setup of the CP (Forward) is IAW OPLAN/OPORD, movement order, command guidance, and/or TSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increases time required to establish the CP (Forward).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Staff Advance Element establishes CP (Forward).
    a. Positions vehicles, tentage, or equipment to be used IAW layout plan.
    b. Sets up internal arrangement to permit immediate access to all required information.
    c. Sets up analog/digital maps and overlays, which display locations of logistic support facilities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Constructs barriers around CP (Forward) as prescribed by the TSOP.
     e. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
 	
 2. Staff Advance Element provides staff supervision over forward tactical operations.
     a. Provides staff supervision over establishment of the CP area to ensure compliance with layout plan and TSOP.
     b. Supervises the establishment of communications with higher HQ, adjacent, and subordinate units as prescribed by the movement order, TSOP, and SOI/SSI, using appropriate BFACS or other available communications means.
     c. Provides movement assistance to subordinate elements out of the range of main CP's communications.
     d. Maintains "hard copy" overlay or analog/digital situation map(s) with current disposition of friendly and enemy units.
 	
 3. Staff Advance Element provides staff supervision over forward CSS assets/commodities (MMC or Support Operations representatives, as designated by Table of Organization and Equipment and TSOP).
     a. Maintains asset visibility of all CSS assets.
     b. Maintains intransit visibility of forward CSS assets.
     c. Maintains "hard copy" or analog/digital situation maps depicting friendly facilities and sustainment resources in the area of responsibility.
     d. Maintains current customer listing.
     e. Maintains current staff files and journals.
     f. Relays operational information from customer units to rear HQ that affects CSS support operations.
     g. Provides current operational briefing to S2/3 and respective staff sections upon arrival of main body.
     h. Maintains situational awareness at all times using situation boards and/or appropriate/available digitized devices.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section

TASK: Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements (63-6-4017)
(<u>FM 55-10</u>) (FM 3-4) (FM 55-1)
(FM 63-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command's first movement element crosses its SP IAW the movement order. The S2/3 Section is required to monitor road marches until all closing reports are received. All subordinate elements' relocation plans are available to the S2/3 Section. LPT is available for review. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower, are available. Deviations from movement order(s) may occur. Each subordinate element and HQ must make a closing report as prescribed in the TSOP(s). The threat is capable of launching air attacks, employing chemical agents, and engaging in EW. The rear party departs when the main body is established in the new area. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All subordinate units are relocated to new areas as prescribed in movement order and occupation plan. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase staff reaction and coordination of movement deviations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Staff Sections, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire, provide support for HQ company and other assigned or attached elements' move.
   a. Provide tactical situation information.
   b. Coordinate additional CHS requirements with supporting medical elements.
   c. Coordinate additional recovery requirements with the supporting element.
   d. Coordinate engineer and MP support requirements with RCPOC.
   e. Coordinate convoy clearance request with movement control element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Brief all element commanders on tactical situation, communications frequencies and procedures, and emergency action procedures.		
g. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, MTS, or radio.		
2. S2/3 Section monitors movement of subordinate elements and HQ.		
a. Maintains communications with each subordinate and HQ elements IAW movement orders and TSOP, using appropriate BFACS, MTS, or radio.		
b. Enforces COMSEC measures IAW movement order and TSOP.		
c. Posts subordinate and HQ elements' movement progress on the analog/digital situation map, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		
d. Annotates subordinate and HQ elements' march progress on the road movement graphs, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		
e. Provides corrective actions to subordinate and HQ elements when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, route adjustments and increased MOPP levels), using appropriate BFACS, MTS, radio, or wire.		
f. Provides coordination for emergency support between subordinate elements and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency.		
g. Coordinates subordinate elements en route support requirements with area support units until all known requirements are fulfilled.		
h. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, MTS, or radio.		
i. Records closing reports from subordinate and HQ elements upon receipt.		
j. Provides final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and RCPOC, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS.		
3. Support Operations personnel direct logistics operations during move.		
a. Coordinate requirements with the supported unit(s).		
b. Coordinate pickup or delivery of logistics support items between subordinate elements and requesting units, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS.		
c. Maintain situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Communicate emergency requirements to staff currently on the move, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or MTS. e. Provide close down report to S2/3 Section (forward).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4018	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters
63-6-4021	Supervise Support Operations Sub-element Functions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
        Command Section
        Support Operations Section
        Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
        Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
        Transportation Branch
        Facilities Branch
        Petroleum Liaison Section
        Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch
        Base Petroleum Laboratory
        Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters (63-6-4018)
     (<u>FM 63-3</u>)   (FM 3-19.30)   (FM 3-4)
     (FM 5-103)

             ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                            (Circle)

             COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                            (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Subordinate elements are moving along designated route(s) into the new area of operations. Convoy leaders are required to submit closing reports to the S2/3. The S2/3 has reviewed the occupation plan with both the advance and arriving elements. The command's advance/quartering party has established a tentative site for the CP (Forward). Tentative work areas have been established for the LOC by staff advance elements. LPT is available for review. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower are available. The command's advance/quartering party leader has briefed the S2/3 and unit commander on the status of new area preparation. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Subordinate elements, logistics and CHS facilities, and the CP are established IAW layout plan, OPORD, and TSOP. All new CP preparation tasks are accomplished as directed by the S2/3 IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase time required to establish subordinate elements and HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/3 Section monitors movement of advance/quartering parties.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Maintains constant communications IAW movement order and TSOP, using appropriate communication and/or automation system(s). b. Coordinates support or emergency action requirements with appropriate element based on assistance required, using appropriate communication and/or automation system(s). 2. Headquarters Advance Staff Element performs CP functions. a. Supervises establishment of area IAW layout plan and TSOP. b. Establishes messenger runner system until wire communications have been established. c. Coordinates CSS operations from forward location (limited operations), using appropriate BFACS. d. Supervises the establishment of wire communications within the CP area. e. Sets up situation map(s). f. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate communication and/or automation system(s) BFACS. 3. S2/3 Section monitors positioning of subordinate units and HQs. a. Supervises positioning of elements as prescribed by the layout plan. b. Coordinates impact of position changes with other staff sections. c. Approves position changes of subordinate elements that are caused by terrain and/or tactical considerations. d. Posts situation map(s) and overlay(s) to reflect new positions. e. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate communication and/or automation system(s). f. Provides establishment update to the commander and XO, using appropriate communication and/or automation system(s). g. Employs safety measures IAW TSOP and publications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4016	Establish Communications
63-6-4021	Supervise Support Operations Subelement Functions
63-6-4023	Coordinate Internal Logistics
63-6-4036	Supervise Operations Security Program
63-6-4038	Maintain Communications
63-6-4042	Provide Command and Control

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
               S1 Section
               S2/S3 Section
               S4 Section
               Support Operations Section
               Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
               Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Establish the Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas (63-6-4019)
     (<u>FM 63-3</u>)   (FM 100-20)   (FM 101-5)
     (FM 11-32)

               ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                              (Circle)

               COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                              (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The main body of the HQ has arrived at the new operational area and the S2/3 has directed the general setup and location of staff areas. Advance party personnel have set up tentative staff workstations using guidelines established by the occupation plan and TSOP. The headquarters has analog and/or digital communication with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded to the commander's digital device. LPT is available for review. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower, are available. The CP (Forward) maintains control of operations until the new LOC is fully functional. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Logistics Operations Center is capable of communicating with and controlling CSS and survival assets within time specified in the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increases the time required to establish LOC and administrative areas.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Staff Sections establish LOC.
   a. Identify staff working area that facilitates immediate access of staff personnel to all required information.
   b. Set up internal arrangement IAW XO and Support Operations Officer, or S2/3 when support operations elements are included in the S2/3 section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Set up maps, map overlays, and informational displays, which show the current tactical situations of all friendly and threat forces affecting the mission.
d. Set up status boards, which display locations of CSS facilities and their capabilities and status of personnel and equipment.
e. Establish analog and digital communications nets in order of priority specified in the TSOP and OPORD.
f. Establish area for processing incoming and outgoing messages.
g. Establish commander's briefing area.
h. Prepare sleep plan that is consistent with phases of supported units' operations.
i. Establish policy file, records, staff journals, and branch workbooks.
j. Set up area access and security IAW the TSOP.
k. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio, wire or messenger.
 	
2. S1 and S4 Sections establish administrative areas.
   a. Identify staff working areas that facilitate immediate staff access to all required information.
   b. Set up analog/digital maps and status boards displaying status of internal logistics, personnel, and equipment.
   c. Establish communications nets in the order of priority specified by the TSOP.
   d. Establish policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.
   e. Coordinate generator electrical power with the S2/3 Section.
 	
3. S6 establishes analog and digital communications.
NOTE: For staffs without a S6 Section, this task will be performed by the S2/3 Section, Communications Branch.
   a. Determines communications requirements.
   b. Establishes local area network.
   c. Issues passwords.
   d. Establishes wire communications.
   e. Operates the switchboard.
   f. Establishes analog and digital communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
      S1 Section
      S2/S3 Section
      S4 Section

TASK: Direct Deployment Alert Activities (63-6-4850)
    (<u>FM 55-65</u>)   (FM 100-17)   (FM 101-5)

              ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                               (Circle)

              COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command receives a WARNO to go to an increased deployability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The movement plan/order, recall plan, security plan, and RSOP are available. The command's subordinate units are deploying as part of the command deployment. The command HQ communicates with subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Alert notification activities are performed under all day or night environmental conditions IAW the Recall Plan and the EOC is staffed IAW RSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/S3 Section/Staff Duty Officer executes alert notification procedures.
   a. Authenticates deployment warning order IAW RSOP.
   b. Notifies commander and S2/S3 that DISCOM has received a deployment warning order.
   c. Initiates recall procedures IAW commander's guidance and Recall Plan.		

* 2. Commander and S2/S3 supervise alert and recall activities.
   a. Direct implementation of Recall Plan, as required.
   b. Direct establishment of the EOC.
   c. Task staff sections to provide personnel for the EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.
   d. Monitor recalls progress for compliance with RSOP.
   e. Identify present-for-duty status by reviewing recall status reports from subordinate units.
   f. Calculate recall percentages IAW recall plan.
   g. Brief commander and S2/S3 on progress of recall.		

3. S2/S3 Section monitors progress of recall.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Identifies time-phased present-for-duty requirements by reviewing recall plans.
b. Identifies present-for-duty status by reviewing recall status reports from subordinate units.
c. Calculates recall percentages IAW recall plan.
d. Monitors establishment of physical security of the HQ and subordinate unit areas by inspection and/or review of recall status reports.
e. Briefs commander and S2/S3 on progress of recall.
 	
4. Staff sections perform alert functions.
   a. Designates personnel to staff EOC IAW RSOP.
   b. Briefs, as required, staff officer/section chiefs on status of recall.
 	
5. S2/S3 Section performs deployment alert activities.
   a. Coordinates with higher HQ staff element for guidance concerning deployment requirements.
   b. Issues SOIs, authentication tables, operations codes, frequency and call signs to subordinate units.
   c. Directs units to initiate OPSEC procedures.
   d. Activates, as designated, guard mount to control access to restricted areas.
   e. Sends request to S4 Section for maps, if needed.
   f. Establishes secure communications with higher HQ staff elements and/or installation EOC.
   g. Identifies liaison to higher HQ, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 S1 Section
 S2/S3 Section
 S4 Section
 Support Operations Section

TASK: Establish the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)   (63-6-4851)
   (<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (AR 530-1)   (FM 3-19.30)

 ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5
 (Circle)

 COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U
 (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has directed that the EOC be established. The command's subordinate units have been notified. Personnel and equipment required to establish the EOC are available. The location of EOC has been designated. The RSOP, movement plan/order, and security plan are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The EOC is established under all day or night environmental conditions IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance and within the time specified by the XO or S2/S3.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Executive Officer or S2/3 supervises establishment of the EOC. a. Identifies EOC requirements and layout by reviewing the RSOP and commander's guidance. b. Directs S2/3 Section to set up EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance. c. Assigns EOC work areas to staff elements as prescribed by RSOP and XO or S2/3 guidance. d. Directs staff sections to set up EOC work areas IAW RSOP and commander's guidance. 2. S2/3 Section sets up EOC. a. Identifies work areas that facilitate immediate access of personnel to all required information. b. Sets up internal arrangement of EOC IAW XO or S2/3 guidance. c. Establishes communications and/or data processing in order of the priority specified in the movement plan/order and/or RSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Sets up maps, map overlays, informational displays, and status boards.
   e. Establishes areas for processing incoming and outgoing messages.
   f. Establishes commander's work area.
   g. Establishes commander's briefing area.
   h. Prepares EOC manning schedule.
   i. Establishes policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.
   j. Sets up area access and security IAW the RSOP and security plan.
   k. Prepares EOC access roster.
   l. Distributes EOC access roster IAW RSOP and security plan.
   m. Briefs XO or S2/3 upon completion of the EOC setup.
 	
3. Staff sections set up EOC work areas.
   a. Positions equipment IAW RSOP.
   b. Establishes policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.
   c. Sets up maps and status boards displaying status of deployment operations.
   d. Sets up briefing area for daily situation briefings.
   e. Briefs XO or S2/3 when EOC is operational.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
        S1 Section
        S2/S3 Section
        S4 Section
        Support Operations Section

TASK: Operate the Emergency Operations Center (EOC) (63-6-4852)
   (<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (AR 530-1)   (FM 100-10)
   (FM 3-0)

              ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                        (Circle)

              COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                              (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command deployment activities have commenced. Staff journals, workbooks, current maps, overlays, the RSOP, movement plan/order, movement directive, and physical security plan are available. The operation of the EOC is required to coordinate the command's deployment activities. Subordinate units' wheeled vehicles and equipment move to the A/SPOE by convoy or rail. The EOC communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command deployment activities and information dissemination are performed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Executive Officer or S2/S3 supervises EOC operations.
    a. Inspects entry and exit procedures for compliance with the physical security plan.
    b. Assigns specific areas of responsibility and work shifts to all assigned members.
    c. Monitors the performance of personnel in their functional areas to ensure compliance with established guidance and the RSOP.
    d. Provides briefings on current situation to the commander, as required.
 	
 2. EOC performs EOC deployment support duties.
    a. Maintains staff journal(s) and entries IAW current command policy and RSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Maintains section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references.		
c. Maintains current maps and overlays depicting all routes and locations that affect the EOC's operation.		
d. Maintains current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily EOC and section journal entries.		
e. Submits deployment readiness reports to appropriate HQ and installation EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance, as required.		
3. EOC monitors movement of subordinate units' equipment to A/SPOE.		
a. Monitors rail loading and convoy staging activities for compliance with the movement order.		
b. Maintains communications with each subordinate unit IAW movement order and RSOP.		
c. Monitor SP, check point, RP, and closing reports from convoy commanders for compliance with movement order.		
d. Posts subordinate units' movement progress on the situation map.		
e. Annotates subordinate units' march progress on road movement graphs.		
f. Provides corrective actions to subordinate units when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, route adjustments).		
g. Provides coordination for emergency support between subordinate units and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency.		
h. Provides current movement status of subordinate units to the S2/S3 and commander.		
i. Records closing reports from subordinate units upon receipt.		
j. Provides final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and appropriate HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
Transportation Branch
Facilities Branch
Petroleum Liaison Section
Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch
Base Petroleum Laboratory
Unit Ministry Team
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Supervise Deployment/Redeployment Activities (63-6-4853)
(FM 100-17)   (DOD 4500.32-R VOL 1)   (DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2)
(FM 100-17-3)   (FM 101-5)

      ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5
                   (Circle)

      COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U
                   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Command deployment/redeployment activities have commenced. The command is located in the home station UAA or RAA and the EOC/CP is established. The gaining overseas command has provided a deployment on message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The RSOP, movement plan/order, and TSOP are available. The command HQ communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, supporting organizations, subordinate units, and rear detachment by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment/redeployment activities are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Commander directs deployment/redeployment activities.
  a. Identifies deployment/redeployment mission requirements by reviewing warning order and appropriate CONPLANs.
  b. Provides initial planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.
  c. Directs S1 to coordinate SRP processing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Directs personnel and equipment cross-leveling actions. e. Submits recommendations to appropriate HQ commander that selected personnel attending formal school be allowed to complete course work, if appropriate (deployment only). f. Directs recall of personnel on TDY, attending school, or in authorized leave status, if appropriate (deployment only). g. Directs S2/S3 to issue deployment/redeployment WARNO and movement plan/order. h. Directs implementation of physical security and OPSEC plans. i. Briefs staff and subordinate units on deployment/redeployment mission IAW AR 220-10. j. Conducts overseas orientation. k. Verifies subordinate commanders' clear installation prior to deployment. l. Conducts periodic in-process reviews to monitor preparations for deployment, issue and exchange detailed guidance, refine movement plans, resolve issues, and coordinate support for the deployment. m. Identifies liaison to higher HQ, as required. * 2. Executive Officer supervises staff activities. a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement plan/order. c. Directs staff sections to provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams (for example advance party, MSTs, and rear detachment). d. Directs staff sections to provide input for movement plan/order update. e. Formulates staff operating policies. f. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. g. Coordinates deployment/redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. h. Supervises the operations of the EOC/CP. * 3. Staff officers supervise staff sections. a. Identify all specified and implied tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy/redeploy by reviewing the movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANs, and commander's guidance. b. Exchange pertinent information that is relevant to the deployment/redeployment with other staff sections.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Provide information update(s) to commander and EOC/CP on areas that are critical to the deployment/redeployment mission.
   d. Direct preparation of input to the S2/S3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's overseas orientation, as required.
   e. Provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams, as required.
   f. Forward deployment/redeployment status reports to appropriate HQ and addressees, as required.
   g. Forward personnel and logistics reports IAW higher HQ guidance.
 	
4. Command Section supervises activities of subordinate units.
   a. Monitors performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of proficiency as prescribed in RSOP, plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP.
   b. Monitors external support to determine overall effectiveness, IAW RSOP.
   c. Assigns specific tasks to subordinate units, as required.
   d. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate units' compliance.
   e. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the movement plan/order and annexes, as required.
 	
* 5. Commander and/or XO supervise rear detachment activities.
   a. Appoint rear detachment commander.
   b. Approve rear detachment staffing.
   c. Approve rear detachment plan.
   d. Monitor rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan.
 	
6. S1 Section performs deployment activities.
   a. Coordinates PAO briefings for deploying units.
   b. Verifies appropriate SIDPERS transactions are input for all deploying soldiers once soldiers have completed SRP processing.
   c. Coordinates with legal representatives on pending legal actions for deploying soldiers.
   d. Completes legal actions, as directed by commander.
 	
7. Staff sections perform readiness activities.
   a. Identify readiness shortfalls of subordinate units based on current USRs.
   b. Evaluate subordinate unit's ability to perform mission requirements based on USRs and other status reports required by higher HQ, such as the PERSTAT and LOGSTAT reports.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Develop plan to correct deficiencies to bring subordinate units to deployment standards. d. Back up all automated systems prior to systems being prepared for movement. e. Brief commander on readiness activities and status of subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
        S1 Section
        S2/S3 Section
        S4 Section
        Support Operations Section
        Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
        Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Update Movement Plan/Order   (63-6-4854)
    (FM 55-65)   (FM 100-17)   (FM 101-5)
    (FM 55-1)

             ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                   (Circle)

             COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                          (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has directed that the movement plan/order be updated; and the XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The commander has provided his deployment guidance and concept of operations. The S2/3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, movement plan/order, and CONPLAN/OPLAN are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The movement plan/order is updated IAW FM 55-65, FM 101-5, the RSOP, movement directive, and commander's guidance and within the time prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Executive Officer and S2/3 perform a time analysis.
    a. Calculate total time remaining before deployment/redeployment commences (C-Day).
    b. Identify all steps in the deployment/redeployment process.
    c. Assign time limitation for each step in the deployment/redeployment process.
    d. Disseminate time limitations to all staff sections.
 	
  2. S2/3 Section coordinates staffing for deployment teams.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Identifies personnel, equipment, and accompanying supplies for deployment, to include configuration of equipment as offered for shipment.
b. Coordinates deployment team requirements with staff sections.
c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification.
d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams into updated movement plan/order.
 	
3. Staff sections provide input to movement plan/order update.
  a. Identify internal mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs.
  b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing RSOP and status reports from subordinate units.
  c. Adjust preplanned requirements, as required.
  d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate subordinate elements and installation deployment support organizations.
  e. Update appropriate staff portions of the movement plan/order, as required.
  f. Provide updated movement plan/order input to S2/S3 Section.
 	
4. S2/3 Section updates movement plan/order.
  a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.
  b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order with annexes.
  c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.
  d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support (63-6-4855)
(<u>AR 220-10</u>) (AR 27-10) (AR 600-8-104)
(AR 614-185) (AR 614-200) (FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Commander has directed SRP processing to be conducted and the overseas orientation be prepared. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the command deployment. The movement directive, deployment message, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, installation deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: SRP processing support is coordinated IAW RSOP, commander's guidance, AR 220-10 and a SRP processing schedule is distributed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S1 supervises SRP processing.
    a. Identifies deployability criteria by reviewing the deployment message.
    b. Approves SRP processing schedule.
    c. Monitors SRP processing for compliance with RSOP and SRP processing schedule.
    d. Coordinates adjustments to the processing schedule with the processing chief of section and appropriate subordinate unit.
    e. Briefs, as required, commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of SRP processing.
 	
  2. S1 Section coordinates SRP processing support.
    a. Identifies SRP processing requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement directive, and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Requests command staff elements and subordinate units to provide SRP processing support, as appropriate.
c. Coordinates SRP processing support with the appropriate HQ.
d. Submits SRP processing requests and deploying personnel rosters to SRP processing support organizations IAW RSOP.
 	
3. S1 Section publishes SRP processing schedule.
    a. Verifies SRP processing date and time with installation EOC and appropriate supporting organizations.
    b. Prepares SRP processing schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with installation EOC and supporting organizations.
    c. Submits SRP processing schedule to S1 for approval or modification.
    d. Distributes SRP processing schedule to all appropriate staff sections and subordinate units.
 	
4. Staff sections prepare input to commander's overseas orientation.
    a. Identify mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs.
    b. Identify characteristics of theater of operations that impact on unit's mission performance (for example topography, climate, demographics, political stability, medical threat, traditions, and customs).
    c. Provide commander's overseas orientation input to S2/3 Section.
 	
5. S1 Section prepares the commander's overseas orientation.
    a. Verifies staff input for completeness.
    b. Prepares commander's overseas orientation briefing and supporting material.
    c. Forwards overseas orientation briefing material to commander or XO.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 Section

TASK: Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support   (63-6-4856)

(FM 12-6)	(AR 215-1)	(AR 220-1)
(AR 220-10)	(AR 25-400-2)	(AR 27-10)
(AR 614-185)	(AR 614-200)	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Adjustments to unit strengths and coordination for administrative support are required prior to the command's deployment to an overseas site. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the command deployment. SRP processing has been completed. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The S1 Section continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, and deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and administrative services support is provided IAW FM 12-6, AR 614-185, AR 614-200, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S1 supervises personnel readiness actions.
    a. Directs personnel screening.
    b. Recommends to commander cross-leveling actions and disposition of personnel on TDY, attending school, in authorized leave status, and identified as non-deployable.
    c. Directs recall of personnel TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW commander's guidance.
    d. Directs cross-leveling of personnel IAW commander's guidance.
    e. Coordinates personnel replacement and disposition of excess and non-deployable personnel with higher echelon G1.
     f. Directs disposition of excess and non-deployable personnel IAW higher echelon G1 instructions.
    g. Briefs commander and XO on personnel readiness status, as required.
 	
  2. S1 Section performs personnel screening.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Identifies officer and enlisted personnel attending service schools, TDY, and in authorized leave status.		
b. Recalls personnel TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW S1's guidance.		
c. Reports all unfilled school quotas to higher echelon G1.		
d. Identifies individual deployability criteria by reviewing deployment message.		
e. Identifies non-deployable personnel by reviewing personnel records, SRP results, and commander's guidance.		
f. Prepares deployment personnel status report.		
g. Forwards list of personnel who have completed the SRP process to S1.		
h. Briefs S1 on deployment personnel status.		
3. S1 Section performs cross-leveling of personnel.		
a. Identifies personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification by reviewing personnel status reports.		
b. Verifies personnel overages and shortages by reviewing subordinate units' personnel status reports.		
c. Redistributes personnel within the battalion based on S1 and commander's guidance.		
d. Transfers non-deployment personnel as directed by higher HQ.		
e. Recalculates personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification.		
f. Updates SIDPERS records, as required.		
4. S1 Section performs personnel disposition functions.		
a. Forwards copies of movement directive to school commandant(s) for personnel who will join unit in theater upon completion of school.		
b. Requests disposition instructions for excess and non-deployable personnel from higher echelon G1 Section.		
c. Reassigns excess and non-deployable personnel IAW higher echelon G1 Section instructions.		
d. Clears unavailable, non-deployable personnel IAW higher echelon G1 Section instructions.		
5. S1 Section performs personnel replacement functions.		
a. Submits officer requisitions IAW AR 614-185.		
b. Submits enlisted requisitions IAW AR 614-200.		
c. Assigns filler personnel IAW AR 614-185, AR 614-200, and S1 guidance.		
6. S1 Section provides personnel services support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Identifies personnel service requirements by reviewing the movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, and RSOP.
b. Submits requests for personnel services support from the higher echelon G1, as required.
c. Coordinates postal support with supporting AG.
d. Coordinates for recreational equipment and services with the installation Recreational Services Officer.
e. Coordinates Red Cross support with the local ARC office.
f. Coordinates religious support with installation chaplain.
g. Coordinates press and home town news releases with the installation PAO.
h. Coordinates disposition of POV and storage of personal property with PMO.
i. Appoints subordinate unit Class A agents on the command's orders, as required.
j. Closes out unit funds IAW AR 215-1 and the RSOP.
k. Provides personnel services input for the movement plan/order to the S2/S3 Section.
 	
7. S1 Section provides records management support.
   a. Identifies personnel records to accompany unit to theater of operations IAW AR 25-400-2.
   b. Identifies records to be transferred to records holding area.
   c. Directs units to prepare and maintain abbreviated records IAW AR 600-8-104.
   d. Provides records management input for the rear detachment plan to the S2/S3 Section.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
          Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Coordinate Family Assistance Support   (63-6-4857)
     (<u>AR 608-18</u>)   (AR 608-1)   (FM 100-17)

            ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                          (Circle)

            COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                              (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Requests for family assistance are being received from subordinate units and individual families. The S1, in coordination with the S2/3, is reviewing the command's family assistance plan and supervising plan implementation. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the command deployment. The RSOP and movement plan/order are available. Staff sections continuously receives messages from the ITO and installation support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Family assistance support is coordinated and the updated family assistance plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S1, in coordination with the S2/3 and UMT, supervises family assistance support activities.
    a. Appoints Family Assistance Officer(s), as required.
    b. Approves updated family assistance plan.
    c. Monitors family assistance briefings and activities for compliance with the family assistance plan and commander's guidance.
    d. Briefs commander, XO, subordinate unit commanders, and rear detachment commander on family assistance requirements and availability of support.
 	
2. S1 Section coordinates family assistance support.
    a. Identifies family assistance support requirements by reviewing RSOP, subordinate unit reports, and commander's guidance.
    b. Coordinates family assistance requirements with staff sections.
    c. Coordinates for input into the family assistance plan update with staff sections.
    d. Coordinates family assistance support (for example ACS, AER, SJA, and American Red Cross, with installation agencies).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Coordinates with the Chief of ACS to conduct or participate in family support briefings IAW installation deployment plan.
   f. Briefs the S1 on family assistance requirements and available support.
 	
3. S1 Section updates family assistance plan.
   a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.
   b. Prepares updated copy of family assistance plan.
   c. Forwards draft copy to S1 for approval or modification.
   d. Distributes updated family assistance plan IAW RSOP.
 	
4. S1 Section provides support to families.
   a. Establishes family assistance briefing site and schedules.
   b. Prepares family assistance information packet detailing available support.
   c. Conducts family assistance briefings IAW briefing schedule.
   d. Provides family assistance information packet to families.
   e. Refers personnel requiring assistance to appropriate agencies.
 	
5. Unit Ministry Team representatives perform family assistance activities.
   a. Communicate with all unit level representatives at least once a week during deployment.
   b. Conduct FSG meetings with unit level representatives to address family member concerns.
   c. Disseminate information through FSG channels.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Coordinate Deployment Training Support   (63-6-4858)
    (AR 220-1)   (AR 350-1)
    (FM 100-17)   (FM 7-0)   (TC 25-20)

             ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                   (Circle)

             COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                       (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Training deficiencies exist within the command. Training is required before the command deploys to an overseas site. Training status reports are being received from subordinate units. The movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and deployment information message are available. The command staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Coordination for deployment training support is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S2/S3 supervises deployment training.
   a. Identifies training requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement directive, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message, subordinate unit training reports, and commander's guidance.
   b. Provides guidance on training requirements and priorities.
   c. Approves training schedule.
   d. Monitors training for compliance with training schedule and commander's guidance.
   e. Coordinates adjustments to the training schedule with appropriate subordinate unit commanders and/or agencies providing training support, as required.
   f. Verifies personnel have completed training by reviewing subordinate units training reports.
   g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of training, as required.
 	
 2. S2/S3 Section publishes deployment training schedule.
   a. Coordinates for training support command staff and subordinate units, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Submits training support requests to appropriate installation support agencies IAW RSOP and S2/S3's guidance. c. Prepares training schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with supporting organizations. d. Submits training schedule to S2/S3 for approval or modification. e. Distributes training schedule to appropriate staff sections and subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions   (63-6-4859)
(FM 34-130)   (AR 380-5)   (FM 34-3)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has received a deployment WARNO and the commander has issued his guidance. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the command deployment. The OPSEC Plan, Physical Security Plan, SOI/SSI, movement directive, RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and deployment information message are available. The command staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence is disseminated to subordinate units and intelligence support functions are accomplished IAW higher echelon G2 instructions, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/S3 Section implements physical security procedures.
   a. Designates EOC as a restricted area.
   b. Provides access roster of personnel authorized access to restricted areas.
   c. Provides list of authorized classified document couriers, security managers, custodians, and alternates to appropriate HQ.
   d. Provides a list of area physical security actions taken to appropriate HQ.
   e. Monitors physical security activities for compliance with Physical Security Plan, RSOP, and commander's guidance.
 	
2. S2/S3 Section implements commander's OPSEC program.
   a. Conducts OPSEC analysis to identify OPSEC requirements.
   b. Updates OPSEC Plan based on analysis.
   c. Implements the OPSEC Plan.
   d. Provides feedback on status of OPSEC program to commander and subordinate units.
   e. Provides OPSEC input to appropriate orders and plans.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Coordinates for an OPSEC sweep of command HQ and subordinate units with installation MI detachment. g. Conducts OPSEC briefings, as required.		

3. S2/S3 Section provides classified documents and map services.
  a. Identifies classified documents and map requirements by reviewing requests from subordinate units, RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and commander's guidance.
  b. Submits requisitions for classified documents and maps through appropriate channels.
  c. Distributes classified documents and maps to staff and subordinate units, as appropriate.
  d. Requests disposition instructions for classified documents not required from higher echelon G2.
  e. Publishes policies and procedures for transfer of classified documents IAW higher echelon G2 instructions.
  f. Maintains accountability of classified documents IAW AR 380-5.		

4. S2/S3 Section performs personnel security functions.
  a. Identifies security clearance requirements by reviewing RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message, and commander's guidance.
  b. Verifies security clearance of deploying soldiers.
  c. Submits request for security clearances to higher echelon G2.
  d. Provides instructions to subordinate units on the removal of unit patches, badges, and unit insignia on clothing and equipment.		

5. S2/S3 Section implements SIGSEC procedures.
  a. Provides SIGSEC guidance to staff and subordinate units.
  b. Monitors all methods of unit communications for compliance with SOI/SSI and RSOP.
  c. Briefs the S2/S3 on SIGSEC activities.		

6. S2/S3 Section provides intelligence briefings on theater of operations.
  a. Coordinates with commander to identify commander's information requirements.
  b. Requests current intelligence and background information on the theater of operations from higher echelon G2.
  c. Conducts analysis of theater of operations by reviewing deployment OPLAN/OPORD and appropriate publications.
  d. Develops intelligence briefing on theater of operations.
  e. Submits briefing to S2/S3 for approval or modification.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate units on characteristics of the theater of operations and potential impact on support operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S4 Section

TASK: Provide Deployment Logistics Support   (63-6-4860)
       (<u>FM 100-17</u>)   (AR 220-1)   (AR 710-2)
       (FM 100-10)   (FM 4-30.3)   (FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                          (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                     (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has received a deployment warning order and the commander has issued his guidance. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the command deployment. Equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, RSOP, port call messages, subordinate unit AUELs, and OPLAN/CONPLAN are available. The command staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment logistics support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for cross-leveling of vehicles and equipment is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S4 Section supervises deployment logistics support activities.
    a. Identifies logistics requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and subordinate unit supply, maintenance, and movement status reports.
    b. Recommends to commander cross-leveling actions.
    c. Directs cross-leveling of supplies and equipment IAW commander's guidance.
    d. Directs disposition of excess supplies and equipment IAW higher echelon S4 instructions.
    e. Prioritizes equipment, requiring support maintenance IAW commander's guidance.
     f. Submits request to higher staff element for activation of additional UICs for deploying elements, as needed.
    g. Monitors supply and maintenance activities for compliance with movement SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Monitors movement preparation activities for compliance with RSOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.		
i. Directs units to turn in keys to unit buildings and areas to rear detachment commander prior to main body departing.		
j. Briefs commander and XO on logistics readiness status, as required.		
2. S4 Section provides supply and services support.		
a. Identifies special equipment and/or clothing requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, and OPLAN/ CONPLAN.		
b. Coordinates issue of special equipment and/or clothing with higher echelon G4, installation DOL, and appropriate supporting agencies.		
c. Coordinates emergency calibration of deploying equipment.		
d. Updates supply requisitions with correct FAD, deployment UICs, and deployment ship to address, as needed.		
e. Verifies requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a deployment address ten days prior unit deployment.		
f. Coordinates disposition of excess equipment and clothing with higher echelon G4 and/or installation DOL.		
g. Submits requisitions for containers, MHE, blocking, bracing, and packing materials to appropriate supporting agencies IAW RSOP.		
h. Provides disposition instructions for excess equipment and clothing to subordinate units.		
i. Coordinates pick-up of basic and prescribed loads with higher echelon S4 Section or installation DOL.		
j. Provides instruction for pick-up of basic and prescribed loads to subordinate units.		
k. Coordinates POL support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon G4 or installation DOL.		
l. Monitors the preparation of basic and prescribed loads for compliance with RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.		
m. Briefs S4, as required.		
3. S4 Section coordinates cross-leveling of vehicles, equipment, and supplies.		
a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports.		
b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment and supplies within the command IAW commander's guidance.		
c. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon G4 Section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon G4 Section.
 e. Verifies equipment transactions have been completed and equipment is properly signed for by reviewing property book and unit hand receipts.
 f. Updates property book, as required.
 g. Briefs S4, as required.
 	
 4. S4 Section provides maintenance support.
   a. Identifies maintenance requirements by reviewing RSOP, status reports from subordinate units, and commander's guidance.
   b. Provides MST support to subordinate units, as required.
   c. Coordinates for MST, status of vehicles and equipment in support maintenance, disposition of non-deployable vehicles and equipment, and float equipment support with supporting maintenance activity.
   d. Provides instructions on the disposition of non-deployable vehicles and equipment, and float equipment support to subordinate units.
   e. Coordinates maintenance support at the A/SPOE MA with supporting installation.
   f. Submits vehicles and equipment to support maintenance IAW S4 instructions.
   g. Coordinates maintenance support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon G4 or installation DOL.
   h. Briefs the S4 as required.
 	
 5. S4 Section provides movement support.
   a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and subordinate unit AUELs.
   b. Verifies that subordinate unit personnel and equipment transportation requirements have been submitted and are accurate by coordinating with UMC and reviewing DEL.
   c. Provides, as required, movement and documentation assistance to subordinate unit UMOs.
   d. Requests, as required, scales and MHE support from DOL.
   e. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and movement schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC.
   f. Coordinates, as required, convoy clearances and special hauling permits with the ICUMO.
   g. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled. i. Coordinates for return transportation support for command personnel from the SPOE to command area with UMC. j. Coordinates advance party and main body personnel transportation requirements to the APOE with appropriate HQ. k. Conducts, as necessary, movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders. l. Briefs the S4 as required.		
* 6. S4 Section, in coordination with the ICUMO coordinates SPOE MA activities. a. Monitors staging and processing of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement order, call forward instructions, and supporting installation officials' instructions. b. Resolves vehicle and equipment processing deficiencies by coordinating with supporting installation officials. c. Coordinates disposition of frustrated vehicles and cargo with supporting installation personnel. d. Verifies arrangement for supercargoes by coordinating with port commander's representatives. e. Briefs commander as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Support Operations Section
　　　　　Unit Ministry Team
　　　　　Command Section
　　　　　S1 Section
　　　　　S2/S3 Section
　　　　　S4 Section

TASK:　　　Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities　(63-6-4861)
　　(<u>FM 100-17</u>)　　　　　(FM 100-17-3)

　　　　　ITERATION:　　　　　1　2　3　4　5
　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Circle)

　　　　　COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T　P　U
　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has received a movement warning order for deployment. Subordinate units provide personnel and equipment for the advance party. The movement plan/order, RSOP, advance party plan, and TSOP are available. The command staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. CONUS logistics and movement support is provided to the advance party by the supporting installation and MTMC, respectively. Theater logistics support is provided to the advance party by the combatant commander's designated support organization.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section plans advance party operations. 　a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance. 　b. Updates advance party plan IAW commander's guidance. 　c. Coordinates personnel and equipment for the advance party with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan. 　d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations. * 2. Advance party OIC supervises advance party predeployment activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/S3 and commander's guidance.
b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with S4 Section.
c. Coordinates for movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO.
d. Identifies DISCOM organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order, subordinate unit DELs, and CONPLAN/OPLANs.
e. Identifies planned operational locations and mission support requirements by reviewing CONPLAN/OPLANs.
f. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/S3.
g. Briefs commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan, as required.
 	
3. Advance party deploys through APOE to APOD.
   a. Prepares vehicles for air movement.
   b. Deploys IAW movement order.
   c. Performs APOD activities for deployment.
 	
4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body.
   a. Coordinates for arrival schedule and reception of the main body with AACG.
   b. Coordinates for movement of personnel to the MA with PMCT.
   c. Coordinate for ship arrival schedule and movement of equipment to TSB with PSA.
   d. Provides personnel to port commander for movement of equipment from PSA to MA, as required.
   e. Provides command organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to TMCA/MCT.
   f. Coordinates main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with designated supporting organization.
   g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans, as required.
 	
5. Advance party coordinates mission operations.
   a. Provides command organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to appropriate HQ.
   b. Coordinates for current operational and tactical situation with higher echelon Support Operations Section and G2/3.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Identifies preliminary liaison requirements with supporting and supported activities. d. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on operational and tactical situation, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
           S1 Section
           S2/S3 Section
           Support Operations Section
           Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Coordinate Onward Movement   (63-6-4862)
    (<u>FM 100-17</u>)   (FM 100-17-3)

                 ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                        (Circle)

                 COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                            (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command and subordinate unit main bodies have arrived at the A/SPOD. The Advance Party OIC has briefed the commander and staff on the support available in the MA. The PSA moves unit vehicles and equipment from the SPOD to the MA. Administrative and logistics support is provided by an organization designated by the combatant commander. TMCA or MCT provides movement instructions from the TSB to the TAA. The RSOP and TSOP are available. TMCA/MCT monitors unit's movement to the TAA. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The main body arrives in the TAA IAW TMCA/MCT instructions and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Command Section and staff section leadership supervise intransit activities.
   a. Coordinate for tactical situation and future support operation information with higher echelon staff.
   b. Provide staff sections guidance, or coordinate with designated supporting elements/organizations, on intransit support requirements and onward movement priorities.
   c. Establish liaison with supporting organizations that are providing intransit support and movement instructions.
   d. Brief commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as required.		

2. S2/3 Section supervises preparation and movement to TAA. a. Consolidates staff input for intransit support and movement instructions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Issues movement order/FRAGO, maps, and SOI/SSI IAW commander's guidance.
    c. Monitors subordinate unit preparation for convoy operations for compliance with movement order/FRAGO.
    d. Monitors movement of unit.
    e. Forwards SP crossing reports, check point times, and closing reports to TMCA/MCT.
    f. Reports arrival in TAA to higher echelon S2/S3 Section.
 	
3. S1 Section coordinates intransit support.
    a. Coordinates administrative and personnel services support with designated support unit, as required.
    b. Coordinates medical support with designated medical support unit, as required.
    c. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support.
 	
4. S4 Section coordinates MA logistics support.
    a. Coordinates field feeding and logistics support with designated support unit, as required.
    b. Provides instructions to subordinate units on inventory, inspection, and property transfer and accountability procedures.
    c. Identifies maintenance and repair parts requirements by monitoring subordinate unit maintenance status reports.
    d. Coordinates maintenance and repair parts support with designated support unit, as required.
    e. Provides instructions to subordinate units on drawing weapons, fuel, ammunition, and supplies required for movement to TAA.
    f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support.
 	
* 5. S4 Section coordinates movement to TAA.
    a. Coordinates for detailed movement instructions with TMCA/MCT.
    b. Provides movement instructions to S2/3 Section.
    c. Monitors supporting units AUEL updates for compliance with movement order and RSOP.
    d. Monitors vehicle preparation and rail loading operations for compliance with movement instructions, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.
    e. Monitors preparation of movement documentation for compliance with appropriate publications and TMCA/MCT instructions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders/UMOs on movement, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
　　　　　　S2/S3 Section
　　　　　　S4 Section
　　　　　　Support Operations Section

TASK:　　　Coordinate Rear Detachment Support　(63-6-4863)
　　(FM 100-17)　　　　　　　(FM 100-17-5)　　　　　(FM 55-65)
　　(FM 71-100)

　　　　　　　　ITERATION:　　　　　　1　　2　　3　　4　　5
　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Circle)

　　　　　　　　COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T　　P　　U
　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Circle)

CONDITIONS:　Rear detachment support is required.　All subordinate units are deploying/redeploying as part of the command deployment/redeployment.　The rear detachment plan, RSOP, and deployment/redeployment movement plan/order are available.　The command staff continuously receives messages from the installation or theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier.　This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS:　Rear detachment support is coordinated and the updated rear detachment plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S1 Section coordinates rear detachment personnel and administrative services support. 　a. Identifies personnel and administrative services support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, and commander's guidance. 　b. Coordinates rear detachment staffing requirements with staff sections and subordinate unit commanders. 　c. Forwards recommendations for rear detachment staffing to commander for approval. 　d. Coordinates personnel and administrative services support with higher echelon G1 Section or installation/theater support organizations, as required. 　e. Provides personnel and administrative services support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/S3 Section. 　f. Coordinates family support group assistance with higher echelon S1. 　g. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on personnel and administrative services support, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

2. S4 Section coordinates for rear detachment logistics support.
   a. Identifies logistics support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, rear detachment plan, and commander's guidance.
   b. Coordinates logistics support with higher echelon G4 Section or installation/theater support organizations.
   c. Provides copies of property book, document register, and related documentation to the rear detachment commander, as required.
   d. Provides logistics support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/S3 Section.
   e. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on rear detachment logistics support, as required.
 	
3. S2/S3 Section updates rear detachment plan.
   a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.
   b. Prepares updated copy of rear detachment plan.
   c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.
   d. Distributes rear detachment plan update IAW RSOP.
 	
4. S2/S3 Section provides rear detachment support.
   a. Requests new classified document access roster and safe access listing for the rear detachment from higher staff elements.
   b. Coordinates changing of combinations for safes and arms room for the rear detachment with higher staff element.
   c. Assists rear detachment to ensure all classified material not deployed with unit is properly stored, transferred or destroyed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities   (63-6-4864)
     (FM 100-17)   (AR 220-10)   (AR 710-2)
     (FM 12-6)   (FM 55-65)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                              (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                     (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command and subordinate units' main bodies are preparing to depart home station. The staff has completed initial coordination for personnel and administrative services and logistics support. Subordinate units have delivered records and files designated by the S1 to the rear detachment. Dependents have been briefed on the availability of support from the installation and rear detachment. The RSOP, movement plan/order, family assistance plan, and rear detachment plan are available. The rear detachment receives home station reception requirements from S2/S3 Section. The rear detachment continuously receives messages from the installation and higher echelon HQ by telephone and electronic means.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear detachment activities are performed IAW the rear detachment plan and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Rear detachment commander supervises rear detachment activities.
  a. Identifies rear detachment requirements, policies, and procedures by reviewing the rear detachment plan, family assistance plan, and commander's guidance.
  b. Conducts inventory and signs for all installation property and equipment transferred into rear detachment form deploying units.
  c. Publishes a chain of command based on commander's guidance.
  d. Develops rear detachment program to provide service to soldiers and family remaining in rear.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Briefs rear detachment personnel on rear detachment plan and command policies.		
f. Verifies availability of personnel and administrative services and logistics support by coordinating with the installation AG and DOL.		
g. Briefs rear detachment personnel on available personnel and administrative services and logistics support.		
h. Monitors family support group activities for compliance with family assistance plan.		
i. Monitors rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan.		
2. Rear detachment provides administrative and logistics support.		
a. Coordinates SRP processing of late arrivals and/or replacement personnel with DPCA.		
b. Provides administrative and logistics support to late arrivals and/or replacement personnel the installation AG.		
c. Redirects mail IAW rear detachment plan.		
d. Maintains records and files IAW rear detachment plan and appropriate publications.		
e. Provides assistance to families IAW the family assistance plan, as required.		
f. Publishes family support chain of command roster for family members.		
g. Coordinates reassignment of rear detachment personnel with the installation AG.		
h. Coordinates inspection and disposition of real property with supporting installation agency, as necessary.		
i. Conducts physical security inspections of facilities and storage areas.		
j. Reports damage to facilities and storage areas to PMO and installation engineers.		
3. Rear detachment commander coordinates reception at home station.		
a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing the RSOP and S2/S3 Section instructions.		
b. Verifies availability of transportation and intransit support by coordinating with the ITO.		
c. Identifies planned welcoming ceremonies by coordinating with installation support activities and PAO.		
d. Coordinates for transportation of dependents to the APOD with ITO, as required.		
e. Notifies dependents of transportation and reception plans.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Provides S2/S3 Section information on transportation, intransit support, and welcoming ceremonies.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment   (63-6-4865)
(FM 100-17)   (FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has received redeployment WARNO and the commander has issued redeployment guidance. The command and subordinate units are located in the designated AA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The command staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. The RSOP and redeployment warning order are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Reconstitution for redeployment is coordinated IAW RSOP and commander's guidance and FM 100-9.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S1 Section coordinates reconstitution of personnel.
   a. Identifies personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS by reviewing subordinate unit's status reports.
   b. Reassigns personnel within the command IAW commander's guidance.
   c. Recalculates personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS.
   d. Submits personnel requisitions to higher echelon G1 Section.
   e. Requests disposition instructions for excess personnel from higher echelon G1 Section.
   f. Assigns filler personnel IAW S1 guidance.
   g. Reassigns excess personnel IAW higher G1 Section instructions.
   h. Updates SIDPERS records, as required.
   i. Briefs commander and XO on personnel status, as required.
 	
 2. S4 Section coordinates reconstitution of vehicles, equipment, and supplies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports. b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment and supplies within the command IAW commander's guidance. c. Recalculates shortages and overages. d. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon G4 Section. e. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon Support Operations Office. f. Issues vehicles, equipment, and supplies IAW commander and S4's guidance. g. Provides subordinate units disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies. h. Updates property book, as required. i. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and supplies, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S4 Section
S2/S3 Section
Unit Ministry Team
Command Section

TASK: Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order   (63-6-4866)
(<u>FM 100-17</u>)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 55-1)
(FM 55-65)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5
	(Circle)				

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his redeployment guidance and directed that the redeployment movement plan/order be prepared. The XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the redeployment movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The command and subordinate units are located in the TAA. Trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4 and/or ICUMO. The home station rear detachment commander provides information on reception arrangements. The RSOP, TSOP, and higher echelon redeployment movement order are available. The command staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment movement plan/order is prepared and distributed IAW FM 101-5, the RSOP and commander's guidance and within the time prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/3 Section receives input from staff sections for the redeployment movement plan/order. 　a. Identify redeployment requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOPs, and commander's guidance. 　b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and status reports from subordinate units. 　c. Identify internal support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate staff elements and/or redeployment support organizations.		
e. Consolidates input data received from staff sections.		
2. S2/3 Section coordinates staffing for redeployment teams.		
a. Identifies personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.		
b. Coordinates redeployment teams' requirements with staff sections.		
c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification.		
d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams into movement plan/order.		
3. S2/3 Section coordinates TAA and RAA physical security requirements.		
a. Identifies TAA and RAA physical security requirements by reviewing TSOP, higher echelon redeployment movement order, and commander's guidance.		
b. Coordinates physical security support with higher echelon G2/G3 or supporting logistics support organization.		
c. Coordinates physical security requirements with subordinate units.		
d. Incorporates TAA and RAA physical security instructions into movement plan/order.		
4. S2/3 Section coordinates reception at home station.		
a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.		
b. Forwards reception requirements and projected personnel movement schedules to home station rear detachment commander.		
c. Incorporates planned reception arrangements into the movement plan/order.		
5. S2/3 Section prepares movement plan/order.		
a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.		
b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order.		
c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.		
d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
          S2/S3 Section
          Unit Ministry Team
          S4 Section

TASK: Provide Redeployment Support (63-6-4867)
    (<u>FM 100-17</u>)   (AR 220-10)   (AR 710-2)
    (FM 4-30.3)

          ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                               (Circle)

          COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                    (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has received a redeployment movement order. The command and subordinate units are located in the TAA and trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4. The commander has issued redeployment guidance. The command and higher HQ redeployment movement orders, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The command staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for movement of personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the RAA and/or A/SPOE is accomplished IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistics and support activities. In this section, the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater area of operations after the main body redeploys. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S1 Section provides personnel and administrative services support.
   a. Identifies personnel and administrative requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
   b. Establishes redeployment personnel processing procedures IAW higher echelon guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Coordinates reassignment of personnel redeploying as individuals with higher echelon G1. d. Provides personnel service support, as required. e. Provides administrative support, as required. f. Verifies personnel and finance records have been updated by reviewing subordinate units' records. g. Verifies that line of duty investigations are complete prior to redeployment. h. Processes personnel actions, to include evaluation reports and decorations and awards. i. Coordinates rear detachment personnel and administrative services support with higher echelon G1. 2. S2/S3 Section coordinates training requirements. a. Identifies training requirements (for example weighing and marking, customs inspections, cleaning of vehicles and equipment, and documentation requirements) by reviewing appropriate HQ redeployment movement order, subordinate unit requests for training support, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates redeployment training support with higher echelon G2/G3. c. Notifies subordinate units of scheduled training events. d. Monitors scheduled training events for compliance with appropriate publications and commander's guidance. e. Updates training records, as required. 3. S4 Section coordinates supply and services support. a. Identifies supply and services support requirements. b. Identifies quantities of supplies on-hand by reviewing subordinate unit supply status reports. c. Identifies supplies due-in by reviewing document registers. d. Identifies excess supplies due-in by comparing supply requirements with quantities on-hand and due-in. e. Cancels requisitions for quantities determined to be excess. f. Identifies required supplies arriving after unit is packed for redeployment by coordinating with DS supply organization. g. Verifies requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a redeployment address by reviewing requisitions ten days prior to unit redeployment. h. Submits request to redirect supplies due-in after unit is packed, to higher echelon S4 or supporting supply activity, as needed. i. Coordinates field feeding and services support with designated support unit, as required. j. Designates date/time when internal supply and service support terminates.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Provides copies of the unit hand receipts and related documentation to OIC of the (theater) rear detachment, as required.		
l. Coordinates supply and service support for main body and (theater) rear detachment during movement with G4.		
4. S4 Section coordinates maintenance support.		
a. Identifies maintenance support requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
b. Identifies vehicles in organizational and support maintenance by reviewing subordinate units' maintenance status reports.		
c. Identifies vehicles available for redeployment by coordinating with command and DS maintenance organizations.		
d. Requests disposition instructions for vehicles and equipment not available for redeployment from G4.		
e. Tasks subordinate units' maintenance sections to provide MST support in assembly areas, staging areas, and during road movement.		
f. Designates date/time when organizational maintenance support terminates.		
g. Coordinates maintenance and recovery support beyond subordinate units' capability with G4 or supporting logistics support organization.		
h. Coordinates vehicle cleaning and support with G4 or supporting logistics support organization.		
* 5. S4 coordinates redeployment movement.		
a. Identifies redeployment movement requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
b. Verifies UMD and movement schedules, routes, and location of RAA and staging areas by coordinating with TMCA/MCT.		
c. Develops milestones for planning, packing, loading, and movement operations IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
d. Coordinates customs and USDA inspection support with G4.		
e. Monitors supporting units AUEL updates for compliance with redeployment movement order and RSOP.		
f. Monitors subordinate units preparation of movement, customs, and USDA forms for compliance with redeployment movement order, RSOP, and appropriate publications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Monitors supporting units vehicle and equipment preparation and cleaning for compliance with USDA guidance, RSOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. h. Monitors subordinate units' customs and USDA inspection results for compliance with appropriate publications. i. Monitors subordinate units' movement readiness status for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. j. Inspects subordinate units' movement plans/orders for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. k. Briefs commander and/or staff on movement readiness status, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
               S1 Section
               S2/S3 Section
               S4 Section
               Support Operations Section
               Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities   (63-6-4868)
      (<u>FM 100-17</u>)   (FM 55-65)

                  ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                                   (Circle)

            COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has received a redeployment movement order. All subordinate units are redeploying as part of the command redeployment. The movement plan/order, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The command staff continuously receives messages from the redeploying support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. CONUS logistics support is provided to the advance party by the supporting installation.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/S3 Section plans advance party operations.
     a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance.
     b. Prepares advance party plan IAW commander's guidance.
     c. Coordinates advance party personnel and equipment requirements with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan.
     d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations.
 	
* 2. Advance party OIC supervises advance party pre-movement activities.
     a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/S3 and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with the S4 Section.
c. Coordinates for advance party movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO.
d. Identifies command organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order and subordinate unit DELs.
e. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/S3.
f. Briefs, as required, commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan.
 	
3. Advance party moves through APOE to APOD.
   a. Prepares, as required, vehicles for air movement.
   b. Redeploys IAW movement order.
   c. Performs APOD activities for redeployment.
 	
4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body.
   a. Coordinates main body arrival schedule and reception with AACG.
   b. Coordinates inspection and processing procedures with USCS and USDA officials.
   c. Coordinates for movement of personnel to home station with MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives.
   d. Provides command organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to MTMC representatives, supporting installation representatives, and home station UMC.
   e. Completes required movement documentation IAW MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives.
   f. Coordinates, as required, main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with supporting installation.
   g. Assists home station rear detachment with final coordination for Welcome Home reception activities.
   h. Briefs, as required, commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities   (63-6-4869)
(FM 100-17)   (DOD 4500.32-R VOL 1)   (DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2)
(DOD DIR 4500.9)   (FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command and subordinate units' main bodies have redeployed. The (theater) rear detachment is located in the RAA with the command's vehicles and equipment. Vehicles and equipment are prepared for strategic sea movement and are waiting to be called forward to PSA SA. S4 has provided copies of the property book, document register, and related documents. TMCA/MCT provides call forward instructions to the A/SPOE. The RSOP, TSOP, redeployment movement order, and (theater) rear detachment plan are available. The (theater) rear detachment continuously receives messages from the theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and command HQ by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit's vehicles and equipment are transferred to the PSA and (theater) rear detachment personnel redeploy to home station IAW the (theater) rear detachment plan and redeployment movement order.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistics and support activities. In this section, the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Rear detachment commander supervises rear detachment activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Identifies operational and support requirements by reviewing (theater) rear detachment plan; redeployment movement order; and S1, S4, and commander's guidance. b. Verifies availability of personnel services, administrative services, and logistics support by coordinating with supporting organizations. c. Develops an inspection and maintenance schedule IAW rear detachment plan. d. Monitors levels of personnel, administrative, and logistics support to ensure appropriate levels of support are provided. e. Directs correction of deficiencies noted during USCS and/or USDA inspections. f. Inspects movement and property accountability documentation to verify accuracy IAW (theater) rear detachment plan and appropriate publications. g. Forwards (theater) rear detachment status reports to command HQ, as required. h. Briefs commander and/or staff of supporting logistics support organization on (theater) rear detachment activities, as required. 2. Rear detachment coordinates logistics support. a. Identifies repair parts requirements by reviewing maintenance inspection reports and the document register. b. Identifies supply requirements by conducting inventory of supplies on-hand. c. Forwards requisitions for required supplies and repair parts to supporting logistics support organization. d. Coordinates receipt of supplies and repair parts with the supporting logistics support organization. e. Coordinates field feeding and billeting support with the supporting logistics support organization. 3. Rear detachment maintains vehicles and equipment. a. Inspects vehicles and equipment IAW inspection and maintenance schedule. b. Prepares requisitions for repair parts, as required. c. Performs operator and organizational maintenance, as required. d. Coordinates MST support with supporting logistics support organization. e. Cleans vehicles to meet USDA requirements. 4. Rear detachment coordinates movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Coordinates processing of vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE with TMCA/PMCT and PSA. b. Coordinates redeployment of personnel and processing procedures with TMCA/PMCT and DACG. c. Monitors customs and USDA inspections for compliance with the redeployment movement order and appropriate publications. d. Monitors joint PSA inspection to ensure vehicles and equipment meet requirements for strategic sealift. e. Processes vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE. f. Redeploys personnel IAW TMCA/PMCT and DACG instructions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Home Station Activities   (63-6-4870)
(<u>FM 100-17</u>)   (FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has arrived at home station. Main body arrives at home station prior to equipment arrival at SPOD. The command receives notification of ship and rear detachment arrival from the ITO. The maintenance SOP and RSOP are available. The ITO provides the movement instructions and convoy clearances. Intransit logistics support is provided by the supporting installation. The command staff continuously receives messages from the installation agencies and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Home station activities are accomplished IAW commander's guidance.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistics and support activities. In this section, the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Commander directs post deployment activities.
    a. Directs preparation of after-action reports.
    b. Directs inventory and cleaning of vehicles, equipment, and weapons.
    c. Directs turn-in of hand-receipted and float equipment.
    d. Approves after-action report.
    e. Briefs appropriate HQ commander and staff on operations in theater of operations.		

2. S1 Section performs post deployment activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Coordinates personal affairs briefings, such as family and stress briefings.		
b. Retrieves records stored prior to deployment.		
c. Verifies records have been updated with deployment information and appropriate personnel actions by reviewing records of deployed soldiers.		
d. Processes SIDPERS transactions for redeploying soldiers, if required.		
e. Coordinates Welcome Home activities for (theater) rear detachment personnel.		
3. S4 Section coordinates reception of rear detachment.		
a. Coordinates transportation support for (theater) rear detachment personnel with ITO.		
b. Verifies arrival schedule and processing requirements by coordinating with AACG.		
c. Resolves inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with MTMC, USCS, and USDA officials.		
d. Briefs commander and XO on status of (theater) rear detachment reception.		
4. S4 Section coordinates reception of equipment at SPOE.		
a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, redeployment movement order, and subordinate unit DELs.		
b. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC.		
c. Coordinates for convoy clearances with the UMC, as required.		
d. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity.		
e. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled.		
f. Coordinates transportation support for command personnel to the SPOD with the UMC.		
g. Conducts movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as necessary.		
* 5. S4 coordinates SPOD MA activities.		
a. Monitors inventory, inspection, processing, and staging of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement instructions; convoy clearances; and MTMC and PSA officials' instructions.		
b. Resolves vehicle and equipment inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with PSA, USCS, and USDA officials.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Coordinates disposition of non-operational vehicles with supporting installation personnel.
d. Reports SPOD status by telephone or radio to S2/S3 Section, as appropriate.
e. Provides SP crossing report by telephone or radio to S2/S3 Section, as appropriate.
 	
6. S4 Section monitors stand-down of vehicles, equipment, and weapons.
   a. Monitors inventory and maintenance status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons for compliance with maintenance SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.
   b. Provides vehicle and equipment technical inspection and excess equipment instructions to subordinate units.
   c. Monitors vehicle and equipment turn-in for compliance with appropriate publications and S4 instructions.
   d. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons.
 	
7. S2/S3 Section drafts after-action report.
   a. Verifies staff and subordinate unit input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.
   b. Prepares after-action report.
   c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.
   d. Distributes after-action report IAW commander's guidance.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
            S1 Section
            S2/S3 Section
            S4 Section

TASK: Direct Integration Activities   (63-6-4871)
        (<u>FM 100-17-3</u>)   (FM 100-17)   (FM 55-65)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                            (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                        (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command is in the process of deploying or has deployed to an OCONUS site following receipt of a WARNO. Appropriate contingency plans have been modified and are being executed. The unit has arrived at the POD, moved through the designated staging site, and has closed in the TAA. Prior to onward movement from the staging area, the unit verified that it met mission readiness criteria. The unit initiates command and control procedures with the gaining command. The unit security plan, unit access rosters, TSOP and current maps are available. The unit is deploying as part of a higher echelon deployment. Integration activities are performed under all day or night environmental conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and equipment are combat ready and integrated into the operational mission of the gaining tactical force commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Commander supervises integration activities.
    a. Directs TOC to be established IAW TSOP.
    b. Directs communications link-up into gaining command net.
    c. Directs command to integrate unit security plan into gaining command's operational force protection measure.
    d. Directs command HQ to integrate into the gaining command's CSS system.
    e. Directs command to submit reports IAW gaining command SOPs/OPLANs.
    f. Provides guidance to staff on corrective actions based on readiness reports from subordinate units.
    g. Releases consolidated command readiness report to higher HQ.
 	
  2. S2/S3 Section completes integration actions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Enters tactical communication net.
   b. Establishes command TOC.
   c. Integrates unit into TAA security plan.
   d. Directs stationing of subordinate units within assigned area.
   e. Clarifies operational mission parameters with gaining command.
   f. Assists subordinate units in correcting readiness deficiencies.
   g. Submits required reports to gaining command.
   h. Conducts training as directed by gaining command.
 	
3. S1 Section performs integration activities.
   a. Submits consolidated personnel status report to higher HQ.
   b. Monitors status of soldiers with a special status, such as sick or injured.
   c. Requests replacements, as needed.
   d. Coordinates medical, personnel, religious, MWR, and finance support.
 	
4. S4 Section performs integration activities.
   a. Establishes direct support relationships with various support elements in the support structure to include supply, field services, automation maintenance and maintenance.
   b. Provides subordinate units CSS support information, to include location of supply and maintenance points, field service support information, and procedures for resupply.
   c. Submits logistics status report in format directed by gaining command.
 	
5. S6 Section or Communications Branch, as applicable, performs communications integration activities.
   a. Establishes direct support relationship with gaining command for COMSEC and CCI activities.
   b. Installs, operates, and maintains communications equipment.
   c. Establishes and operates battalion NCS.
   d. Ensures communications linkup with higher, adjacent, and supported commands.
   e. Selects signal sites and provides advice on interference problems.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
           S1 Section
           S2/S3 Section
           S4 Section
           Support Operations Section

TASK: Plan Command Deployment in a Peacetime Environment (63-6-4872)

(FM 55-65)	(AR 220-10)	(DOD 4500.32-R VOL 1)
(DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2)	(DOD DIR 4500.9)	(FM 100-17)
(FM 10-23)	(FM 10-23-1)	(FM 10-23-2)
(FM 10-52)	(FM 10-52-1)	(FM 21-10)
(FM 22-100)	(FM 3-100.4)	
(FM 7-0)		

           ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                          (Circle)

           COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                            (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command is operating in a normal peacetime environment at a normal state of readiness. The unit has a wartime mission with a corresponding OPLAN on file. Unit is conducting operational mission and METL training. The unit MOBPLAN (RC), movement plan, recall plan, RSOP, TSOP, security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. The OPLAN calls for subordinate units to deploy as part of the higher HQ deployment. Command communicates with subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. Peacetime deployment planning activities are performed under all day or night environmental conditions, except NBC. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: MOBPLAN (RC) and movement plan are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

NOTE: MOBPLANs are required only for RC units. RC-specific task steps and performance measures are annotated ("RC").

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Command Section directs deployment planning.
    a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.
    b. Directs OPLAN update.
    c. Directs MOBPLAN (RC) validation.
    d. Directs staff to validate subordinate units' movement plans.
    e. Directs Security Plan update.
    f. Directs RSOP and TSOP update.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Directs SRP activities verification.		

* 2. XO coordinates staff planning.
    a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.
    b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement/deployment plans.
    c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.
    d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.
    e. Coordinates update of RSOP and TSOP.
    f. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.		

3. S2/S3 Section analyzes mission.
    a. Identifies specified and implied tasks in the OPLAN.
    b. Identifies documented policies and procedures.
    c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ.
    d. Coordinates with S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission.
    e. Coordinates with S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of missions.
    f. Updates command HQ OPLAN.
    g. Maintains current maps and overlays for all missions for subordinate units.
    h. Approves MOBPLANs (RC) for subordinate units.
    i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission.		

4. Staff conducts readiness review of subordinate units.
    a. Performs personnel readiness review.
    b. Performs logistics readiness review.
    c. Performs OPSEC readiness review.
    d. Identifies readiness issues.
    e. Provides recommendations to improve readiness.
    f. Updates command RSOP and TSOP.
    g. Coordinates with supporting active duty readiness organization for support (RC).		

5. S2/S3 Section validates MOBPLAN (RC).
    a. Verifies mission is current.
    b. Updates MOBPLAN.
    c. Confirms annex information is correct.
    d. Coordinates with S4 for review of logistics portions of plan.
NOTE: MOBPLAN is updated annually, or whenever a change occurs in unit mission or structure.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. S4 Section validates deployment plans. a. Maintains movement plans for all modes of transportation for the command. b. Validates equipment status. c. Validates AUEL for subordinate units. d. Coordinates for S2/S3 review of subordinate units and command movement plans. e. Verifies logistics annexes of MOBPLAN (RC). 7. Staff officers supervise staff sections. a. Direct sections to update RSOP, TSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and commander's guidance annually or whenever changes in unit mission or structure dictate. b. Verify section input for annual commander's mobilization brief. c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/S3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's brief, as required. d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Plan Area Tactical Operations (63-6-4011)
(<u>FM 3-0</u>)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 3-100)
(FM 34-130)   (FM 44-8)   (FM 63-3)

        ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                 (Circle)

        COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                    (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The threat has the capability of intelligence gathering and launching NBC attacks into the area. The commander has provided his concept of operations. The Corps and Division analyses of the AO and unit/higher/subordinate TSOPs are available for planning purposes. LPT is also available for review. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents have been forwarded to the appropriate commanders and staff elements. Higher command's OPLAN/OPORD with annexes is available. The headquarters is collocated with the area RCPOC. Coordination has been established with the RCPOC for required assistance, if needed. Tentative locations of subordinate units support facilities have been designated. The staff operations sections continuously receive messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by automated means, radio, telephone, and courier. SCPE is on hand, or field-expedient and natural shelter is available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The completed NBC defense, OPSEC, and deception plans support the commander's guidance and concept of operations and provide procedures and measures to overcome or minimize the NBC and information collection threats. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increases planning completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/3 Section analyzes tactical NBC information.
   a. Identifies established policies and procedures located in TSOP.
   b. Identifies NBC threat capabilities and recommended countermeasures by reviewing the higher HQ NBC vulnerability analysis.
   c. Identifies potential targets in the area for NBC weapons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

2. S2/3 Section prepares the NBC defense plan.
     a. Establishes procedures and measures that reduce unit vulnerability through terrain shielding and increased protective measures.
     b. Provides recommendations on positioning of subordinate elements to accomplish the support mission.
     c. Specifies levels of protection that correspond with the NBC threat, including MOPP levels.
     d. Establishes procedures for receiving and submitting reports on threat use of NBC weapons, if different from those in the TSOP.
     e. Develops monitoring and survey plans that establish policies and procedures for subordinate elements' survey, monitor, and decontamination teams' operations.
     f. Develops personnel, equipment, and CSS site decontamination plan that establishes priorities for decontamination in coordination with the S4 Section and RCPOC.
     g. Establishes coordination procedures for requesting additional support.
     h. Provides commander's radiation exposure guidance.
     i. Establishes nuclear and chemical medical evacuation and treatment support procedures.
     j. Establishes alternate methods and levels of CSS.
     k. Consolidates NBC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP.
     l. Forwards the NBC defense plan to the S2/3 for approval or modification.
     m. Disseminates the NBC defense plan to all appropriate staff sections and subordinate units, using appropriate communications devices/methods.
 	
 3. S2/3 Section prepares the OPSEC Plan.
     a. Identifies established policies and procedures in the TSOP.
     b. Identifies threat intelligence collection capabilities.
     c. Identifies EEFI indicators that affect or compromise intelligence information.
     d. Identifies all countermeasures and deception requirements, including defense against DE devices.
     e. Transcribes required information from higher HQ OPSEC annexes to the OPLAN.
     f. Consolidates OPSEC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Forwards draft OPSEC plan to the S2/3 Officer for approval or modification. h. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all staff sections and subordinate elements, using appropriate communications devices/methods.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Company Headquarters
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Plan Base Cluster Operations   (63-6-4013)
(FM 3-0)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 100-15)
(FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)   (FM 3-4)
(FM 63-3)   (FM 71-100)   (FM 71-100-2)
(FM 71-100-3)   (JP 3-10)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                       (Circle)

          COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                           (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Intelligence sources report that threat forces are expected to launch Level I or Level II ground forces attacks in the command's rear operational area within a designated timeframe. The supported commander has directed that supporting units/elements prepare detailed rear security and base cluster defense plans. Command guidance emphasized that CSS/CHS operations must continue; even if rear areas are attacked. The RCPOC has provided input to the units' participation and integration into base cluster operations. The RAOC and its location have been identified. Security and operations personnel continuously receive messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by automation, radio, telephone, and courier. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and/or natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Base cluster operations plan is formatted IAW FM 101-5 and TSOP and conforms to the commander's and RCPOC's guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase base cluster operations plan completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/3 personnel develop the direct and indirect fire plan for the base cluster.
   a. Identify boundaries as assigned by the RCPOC.
   b. Identify probable threat avenues of approach and their effects on the area of responsibility.
   c. Assign boundaries to all subordinate units and separate elements, using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Boundaries should be based on number of personnel assigned, type of weapon systems, and mission of unit. 　　　d. Identify weapon systems that are available in coordination with the RCPOC. 　　　e. Identify probable engagement areas in coordination with RCPOC. 　　　f. Selects target reference points in coordination with the RCPOC and designated fire support element. 　　　g. Prioritizes defense of CSS facilities in coordination with the RCPOC. 　　　h. Develops fire support request and coordination measures in coordination with the RCPOC and designated fire support element. 　　　i. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. 　2. S2/3 personnel develop mobility and counter-mobility plan for the base cluster. 　　　a. Identify all obstacle constraints and restrictions in the RCPOC plan. 　　　b. Identify all possible obstacles by location and type. 　　　c. Identify all available obstacle assets. 　　　d. Coordinate additional support requirements with RCPOC, Support Operations Section, and supporting engineer element, using appropriate BFACS. 　3. S2/3 personnel develop air defense plan. 　　　a. Identify all established air defense policies and procedures in the OPLAN and the TSOP. 　　　b. Identify probable air avenues of approach in coordination with the RCPOC. 　　　c. Establish air defense priorities for designated areas and facilities in coordination with RCPOC and air defense elements. 　　　d. Establish air defense assistance coordination measures, using appropriate BFACS. 　　　e. Establish air defense warning signals, if different than those set forth in TSOP. 　4. S2/3 personnel develop base cluster response force plan. 　　　a. Identify response force composition and requirements in the TSOP. 　　　b. Revise response force structure and subordinate elements' taskings as dictated by current tactical situation. 　　　c. Identify assembly point location(s).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Coordinate additional equipment/supply requirements with the S4 Section.		
e. Develop response force training plan.		
f. Task subordinate elements to provide required personnel and equipment for response force based on present for duty strength and current missions.		
g. Maintain situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS.		
5. S6 Section develops analog and digital communications plan for the base cluster elements.		
NOTE: If there is no S6, this subtask will be performed by the Communications Branch, S2/3 Section.		
a. Develops intra-base cluster communications plan that encompasses all units located within the area of responsibility.		
b. Develops external communications plan that interfaces with RCPOC, higher command, and fire and air support elements.		
c. Designates base cluster operations call signs, frequencies, and procedures.		
d. Coordinates overall communications plan with supporting signal element and RCPOC, using appropriate BFACS.		
e. Establishes a messenger system with runner as a backup communications system.		
6. S4 and S1 Sections develop logistics plan for base cluster operations.		
a. Calculate tentative logistics requirements for response force and external reaction forces.		
b. Designates responsibility for resupply of equipment and supplies (including Class VIII) to specific subordinate elements.		
c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation plan with the medical support elements, using appropriate BFACS.		
7. Plans and Intelligence Branch coordinates base cluster operations for command elements in other areas of responsibility.		
a. Coordinates subordinate units' responsibilities with the base cluster operations element responsible for that area, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		
b. Coordinates base cluster operations policies, procedures, and reports for units outside command's area of responsibilities.		
8. S2/3 Section and S4 Section develop ADC plan.		
a. Identify all established policies and procedures in OPLAN and the TSOP.		
b. Calculate probable ADC requirements in the area of responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Identify current ADC assets within the command in coordination with the RCPOC.
   d. Coordinate additional support requirements with the G4 Section, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   e. Assign specific functions to all subordinate elements IAW TSOP.
   f. Coordinate ADC plans and procedures with the RCPOC and supporting MP unit, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   g. Coordinate ADC priorities with the RCPOC and G3 and G4 Sections, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   h. Identify alternate operational sites or alert sites in coordination with the RCPOC.
   i. Establish warning or alert system, if different from TSOP.
   j. Develop ADC training and rehearsal plan.
 	
9. S2/3 personnel prepare and distribute base cluster operations annex.
   a. Consolidate input into appropriate format IAW FM 101-5 and TSOP.
   b. Coordinate draft base cluster operations annex with all other staff sections.
   c. Forward draft base cluster operations annex to operations channels for approval or modification.
   d. Distribute annex to all appropriate staff sections, subordinate units, and the RCPOC, using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
10-6-0200	Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates
10-6-0201	Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations
10-6-0203	Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs
10-6-0206	Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities
10-6-4062	Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support
63-6-4000	Receive the Mission
63-6-4001	Conduct Mission Analysis
63-6-4003	Develop Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4005	Analyze Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4007	Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays
63-6-4022	Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (63-6-4035)
(FM 63-3)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)   (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The LOC is divided into two major areas: the logistics and the tactical support areas with staff officers and NCOs working at their assigned duty stations. The supported command is involved in combat operations. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. The unit and higher-headquarters OPORDs, with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents are available to the staff. The unit, higher and lower TSOPs is available. HQ elements are currently coordinating logistics in the command's area of responsibility. Subordinate units are positioned and operational. The threat has the capability to employ units into rear areas to disrupt support to fighting units and to use EW to disrupt communications. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All tactical information relative to force protection is disseminated to all subordinate and attached units. At MOPP 4, performance factors minimally degrade the efficiency of LOC tactical operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S2/3 Officer supervises the tactical support area operations.
   a. Inspects entry and exit procedures for compliance with the TSOP.
   b. Assigns specific areas of responsibility and work shifts to all assigned staff members for 24-hour operation.
   c. Enforces sleep plans that are consistent with phases of the operations.
   d. Monitors the performance of personnel in their functional areas to ensure compliance with established guidance and the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Provides briefing on current tactical situation to the commander and/or XO.		

2. S6 Officer directs the maintenance of all analog and digital communications systems.
NOTE: In some TO&Es, this subtask will be performed by the Communications Branch Chief, S2/3 Section.
    a. Directs the systematic monitoring of all radio networks in order of priority as specified in the OPORD and TSOP.
    b. Supervises personnel who operate the command NCS IAW TSOP, OPORD, and SOI.
    c. Develops and disseminates alternate communications plan for implementation when established methods are disrupted or failed.
    d. Ensures the maintenance of local area networks.
    e. Issues passwords.
    f. Directs the installation of mission-related software.
    g. Directs the installation of antivirus software.		

3. S2/3 Plans and Intelligence Branch disseminates intelligence and weather information.
    a. Inspects intelligence summaries and reports for pertinency to operations and security.
    b. Inspects weather reports for data that could have significant effects on the command's security.
    c. Forwards pertinent intelligence and weather information to all subordinate elements using BFACS, radio, or wire.		

4. S2/3 Plans and Intelligence Branch supervise command's participation in the higher headquarters OPSEC plan.
    a. Disseminates supported command's countermeasure requirements to all subordinate units and logistics elements operating in the AO.
    b. Supervises implementation of countermeasures to overcome threat capabilities in signal and human intelligence and imagery collection.
    c. Inspects command's subordinate units' positions for OPSEC effectiveness.
    d. Provides feedback reports to the operational and intelligence channels on activities that affect OPSEC measures.		

5. S2/3 Plans and Intelligence Branch coordinate NBC defense activities. a. Disseminate supported unit NBC data that pertains to supporting CSS units operating in the area of responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Supervise the command's NBC defense preparations as directed by the G3 or unit commander.		
6. S2/3 Plans and Intelligence Branch perform tactical support area duties.		
a. Maintain current staff journal(s) and entries IAW current command policy and the TSOP.		
b. Maintain current operational maps and overlays depicting all friendly and threat locations that affect the command's CSS operations.		
NOTE: All entries are posted within 50 meters of actual location.		
c. Maintain section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references.		
d. Maintain current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily staff journal entries.		
e. Maintain current NBC situation maps and overlays.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Supervise Operations Security Program   (63-6-4036)
(AR 530-1)   (AR 380-19)   (AR 380-19-1)
(AR 380-40)   (FM 34-1)   (FM 11-72)
(FM 24-16)   (FM 3-19.30)   (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Tactical operations are ongoing. CSS operations have commenced. The command has designated OPSEC teams to identify OPSEC weakness and risks by examining unit and CP communications, signatures, tactical deployment patterns, and camouflage. Threat may be in the form of conventional or unconventional forces and have the capability of intelligence gathering. The OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. The TOC coordinates OPSEC activity throughout the rear area. The unit and higher-level command's OPSEC estimate is available. OPSEC information with recommended countermeasures is disseminated to the HQ or RCPOC. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available, whichever applies. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPSEC program is planned and implemented IAW OPORD and TSOP. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase OPSEC planning and implementation time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/3 Section plans OPSEC program for current operations.
  a. Identifies established policies and procedures by reviewing TSOP.
  b. Lists threat intelligence collection capabilities by extracting information from the OPSEC estimates or order.
  c. Lists EEFI from higher HQs OPSEC estimate or order.
  d. Lists indicators, which affect or may compromise the EEFI.
  e. Lists all countermeasure requirements by reviewing the OPSEC estimate or order and the operations profile.
  f. Prepares OPSEC plan.
  g. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all subordinate elements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

2. S2/3 Section implements OPSEC plan.
    a. Implements OPSEC policies and procedures to overcome or neutralize the threat's collective threat in the areas of communication, intelligence, logistics, and administrative actions.
    b. Enforces COMSEC measures to deny friendly information to the enemy by telecommunication means.
    c. Enforces ELSEC measures to protect electromagnetic transmissions from threat identification or location.
    d. Enforces TEMPEST controls to render enemy detection devices ineffective.
    e. Enforces ECCM to ensure the receipt and transmission of information essential to mission accomplishment is not disrupted.
    f. Enforces information security measures to prevent compromise of classified and non-classified information.
    g. Enforces physical security measures to prevent espionage, sabotage, or theft at command and control or support facilities.
 	
3. S2/3 Section provides feedback on status of OPSEC program.
    a. Inspects subordinate units' positions for OPSEC effectiveness.
    b. Inspects camouflage and concealment measures for compliance with TSOP, OPORD, and current tactical situation.
    c. Identifies OPSEC weakness and recommended corrections by continuously reviewing OPSEC updates.
    d. Coordinates additional support requirements with the G2 and RCPOC using BFACS.
    e. Provides feedback report to commander, staff, and subordinate elements on activities that affect OPSEC measures using BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
         Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
         Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations   (63-6-4037)

    (<u>FM 3-100</u>)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 3-0)
    (FM 3-3)   (FM 3-4)

         ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                     (Circle)

         COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                     (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Threat forces have the capability to launch NBC attacks and isolated NBC incidents have occurred.   Some operational areas have reported as contaminated. The TSOP requires the S2/3 to provide command and control to subordinate units during NBC intrusions. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. The OPORD, with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded to the commander and appropriate staff sections. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander and staff require updated NBC data for current operations and future planning. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Logistics Support is maintained at a level that allows the supported units to sustain momentum of operations. NBC defense measures are conducted IAW NBC defense plan, TSOP, and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase NBC defense operations planning completion and implementation times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/3 Section Plans and Intelligence Branch develops NBC defense plan.
   a. Identifies established policies and procedures by reviewing NBC defense portion of the TSOP.
   b. Identifies NBC threat and recommended countermeasures by analyzing the higher HQs vulnerability analysis and assessment.
   c. Prepares an NBC defense requirement forecast.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Coordinates mass casualty evacuation and treatment support with the MOB and distribution management personnel. e. Coordinates alternate methods of conducting the logistics and CHS mission with Support Operations channels and distribution management section. f. Coordinates alternate lines of communications with S6. g. Coordinates NBC decontamination team support with RCPOC. h. Coordinates additional augmentees and decontamination support with the supported command G3 or higher headquarters G3, to include smoke and NBC decontamination support. i. Develops NBC defense item consumption plan for increased demand. j. Develops personnel, equipment, and facilities decontamination plan. k. Disseminates NBC defense plan to all subordinate elements using BFACS, radio, or wire. 2. S2/3 Section directs preparation for NBC defense. a. Identifies backup command and control procedures. b. Alerts all NBC defense teams and subordinate elements of impending or actual attack using BFACS, radio, or wire. c. Maintains NBC analog and digital situation map(s) to include potential enemy NBC targets, decontamination site overlays, and predicted contamination overlay. d. Directs periodic monitoring by subordinate elements of their assigned areas. e. Directs appropriate MOPP level. f. Directs preparation for receiving NBC decontamination augmentations. g. Directs redeployment elements and facilities. 3. S2/3 Section directs response to initial effects of NBC attack. a. Revises MOPP level as necessary. b. Alerts higher, lower, adjacent units of imminent attack using BFACS, radio, or wire. c. Reestablishes chains of command and communication, as required. d. Assesses damage to equipment and facilities by analyzing reports from subordinate elements for forwarding to RCPOC and main CP. e. Coordinates assistance for subordinate elements with G3 and RCPOC using BFACS, radio, or wire. f. Alerts mortuary affairs and EPW collection points and aid stations of NBC hazards using BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Forwards NBC 1 and subsequent NBC 1 reports to G3 channels and RCPOC using BFACS, radio, or wire. h. Computes yield and ground zero location. i. Prepares downwind hazard prediction. j. Prepares simplified fallout prediction. k. Forwards NBC 6 report to G3 channels and RCPOC, as appropriate. l. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the higher HQs staff.		

4. S2/3 Section directs response to residual effects of NBC attack.
    a. Plots NBC 4 report on digital and analog situation maps.
    b. Forwards NBC 4 report to supported command's G3, the RCPOC, and higher-level command's G3 using BFACS, radio, or wire.
    c. Maintains radiation exposure status.
    d. Prepares contamination overlay(s).
    e. Predicts contamination duration period.
    f. Plots NBC 3 report on situation map.
    g. Briefs NBC implications to unit commander and staff.
    h. Lists restoration decontamination requirements.
    i. Recommends survey requirements to internal staff or command elements and higher HQs NBC element.
    j. Coordinates for replacement of chemical personnel and mass casualty handling procedures with the S1 Section.
    k. Coordinates clearing of obstacles with the higher HQs engineer section and the RCPOC.
    l. Directs appropriate MOPP level.
    m. Coordinates acquisition, storage, and issue of NBC equipment and supplies with the S4 Section.
    n. Develops NBC defense contingency plan.
    o. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the higher HQs staff.		

5. S2/3 Section directs preparation for a friendly NBC strike.
    a. Disseminates STRIKEWARN message to all subordinate elements using BFACS, radio, or wire.
    b. Provides current situation briefing to the unit commander.
    c. Implement NBC defense protective measures.		

6. S2/3 Section directs radiological and chemical surveys.
    a. Selects survey techniques IAW FM 3-4.
    b. Tasks units to provide team(s).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Formulates turnback dose and dose rates.
    d. Prepares overlays and/or strip maps to destination point(s).
    e. Briefs survey team(s) on current situation and information requirements.
    f. Recommends COA to S2/3 after analyzing survey team(s) data.
    g. Lists decontamination requirements.		

7. S2/3 Section directs radiological and chemical decontamination.
    a. Identifies degree and extent of hazard(s).
    b. Establishes an acceptable level of decontamination IAW commander's guidance.
    c. Directs MOPP gear exchange.
    d. Identifies areas and facilities for sustainment decontamination.
    e. Supervises marking of contaminated runoff areas.
    f. Updates HQ and subordinate units' radiation status.
    g. Requests replenishment of NBC decontamination equipment and supplies from S4 or G4 Section, as appropriate.		

8. S2/3 Section coordinates operational decontamination.
    a. Directs PMCS before-operations checks on vehicles and equipment.
    b. Identifies contaminated locations and routes to be taken.
    c. Coordinates set up assistance with subordinate units and site supervisor.
    d. Forwards SITREP to appropriate higher-level or supported unit HQ G3 and RCPOC using BFACS, radio, or wire.		

9. S2/3 Section coordinates for thorough decontamination.
    a. Coordinates additional support with higher-level or supported unit HQ G3 and RCPOC using BFACS, radio, or wire.
    b. Coordinates with S4 or G4, as appropriate, and Support Operations personnel for decontamination priorities of logistics and other CSS facilities.
    c. Directs NBC augmentations to designated area.
    d. Monitors decontamination operations to ensure priority guidance is being followed.
    e. Provides decontamination status updates to the commander and RCPOC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
S6 Section

TASK: Operate Rear Tactical Operations Center   (63-6-4047)
(<u>FM 3-0</u>)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 101-5)
(FM 3-4)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M
	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U
	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Tactical operations are on-going, and threat elements have been spotted in the support area. Initial reports indicate the threat potential is Level II or III. During Level II and III threats, the tactical portion of the LOC assumes the duties of a rear tactical operations center (RTOC). The threat has capabilities to employ units into the rear areas to disrupt support to forward areas. Threat information is provided by the G3 or the RAOC. The operation of the RTOC is required to coordinate defensive measures in the assigned area. The rear operations order and TSOP are available. The RTOC is manned by supported unit rear command post personnel. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Defensive reactions and survival techniques are coordinated and orchestrated by the BCOC and RTOC IAW rear operations plan and the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease RTOC operational efficiency.

NOTE: If the command does not have an S6, these subtasks will be performed by S2/3 Section.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S6 Section personnel establish rear area operations communications network.
  a. Maintain wire communications with all BDOCs in the AO.
  b. Establish digital communications with the RTOC.
  c. Establish radio communications with the supported command G3 and RTOC.
  d. Develop alternate communications plan which is implemented when established methods are disrupted or fail.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
2. S2/S3 Section coordinates RTOC and base cluster defensive activities. a. Consolidates base defensive plans into the overall defensive plan. b. Consolidates base ADC plans into the overall ADC plan. c. Prepares priority listing that identifies the support facilities which have the greatest impact on the current operation. d. Conducts base assessment of each base and its defense measures to ensure compliance with the rear operations plan. e. Forwards sector's tactical situation and status to the supported command G3 and RTOC using appropriate BFACS. f. Corrects all identified base defense weaknesses in coordination with base commanders. g. Maintains current IPB as products are disseminated by headquarters and the RTOC. h. Designates internal response force based on number of personnel, type weapons, and current mission of each base in the AO. i. Establishes coordination with MP units and other available response forces to plan response to Level II or III threat. j. Coordinates with host-nation and allied elements for unit or personnel augmentees in support of rear operations, as required. k. Coordinates NBC defense operations with the supported command G3 and RTOC. l. Provides input to the commander and XO on positioning newly arriving units in the AO. 3. S2/S3 Section coordinates pre-engagement preparation measures. a. Plots location(s) of threat force on the situation map(s) as SPOTREPs are received. b. Disseminates current threat size and location to all subordinate units using appropriate BFACS. c. Forwards all SPOTREPs to the G3 and RTOC using appropriate BFACS. d. Implements defense condition level consistent with threat size and equipment. e. Directs redeployment of all isolated support teams and supply points to closest BCOC or BDOC in coordination with the RTOC. f. Directs preliminary loading of all nonessential equipment and supplies, and positioning of vehicles for immediate exit by all subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Briefs commander and XO on current tactical situation to include redeployment recommendations		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team
S2/S3 Section

TASK:　　　Direct Response to Threat Actions　(63-6-4049)
　　(FM 101-5)　　　　　　　(FM 3-0)　　　　　　　　(FM 3-4)
　　(FM 3-5)

　　　　　　　　ITERATION:　　　　　1　　2　　3　　4　　5　　M
　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Circle)

　　　　　　　COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T　　P　　U
　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Threat elements have been sighted in the command's area of responsibility. Reports indicate the threat potential at Level II or III. The RTOC is operational. Bases in the cluster have reported Level I attacks. The rear operations annex and TSOP are available. Subordinate unit or elements are providing current SITREPs. Threat information is provided by the G2 and RAOC. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions in field or urban settings. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The threat is repelled and/or delayed until relieved by MP elements or a TCF. The pre-established degradation of logistics support is maintained. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease rear operations activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/3 Office/Section makes appropriate response determination. 　　a. Verifies threat level(s) reports. 　　b. Identifies capability of base(s) being threatened. 　　c. Identifies base(s) priority as established by the defense plan. 2. S2/3 Office/Section reports threat location and size. 　　a. Maintains map surveillance of threat force as information is received in subordinate units' SPOTREPs. 　　b. Forwards SPOTREP to the G3 and RAOC using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire. 　　c. Disseminates current threat information to all subordinate elements using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire. 　　d. Maintain situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

3. S2/3 Office/Section coordinates base cluster response.
   a. Establishes security level consistent with threat size and equipment.
   b. Forwards SITREP to the G3 and RAOC as situation changes using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   c. Reports current situation to subordinate units as soon as situation changes using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   d. Recalls isolated support elements to predetermined defensive positions within the base cluster.
   e. Assembles internal response forces at predesignated rally points as prescribed by defense plan.
   f. Coordinates internal response force commitment with the unit's higher HQ G3 section and RAOC using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   g. Directs internal response force maneuvers to delay and deny the threat penetration into established lines.
   h. Coordinates MP, CAS, and preplanned indirect fire support with the unit's higher HQ G3 section and RAOC using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   i. Identifies projected degradation levels within the unit in coordination with G4 channels and all major customer units.
   j. Forwards identified degradation levels to G4 channels using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   k. Maintains current situation maps showing current locations of all friendly and threat forces.
   l. Coordinates additional security requirements for movement of logistics and CHS through affected areas with the unit's higher HQ G3 section and RAOC using appropriate BFACS, radio or wire.
   m. Coordinates threat NBC activities with the unit's higher HQ G3 section and RAOC using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   n. Makes recommendations to the higher HQ commander on partial or total suspension of all logistics functions until threat is driven from the AO or units are relieved by the MPs or TCF.
   o. Directs repositioning of units in base cluster(s) for better defensive position that is consistent with the tactical situation.
   p. Downgrades security level as the threat is driven from area or defeated.
 	
4. S2/3 Office/Section supervises reorganization of base cluster defense.
   a. Performs damage assessment of area of responsibility by reviewing SITREPs from cluster subelements.
   b. Directs, as required, cluster defense plan adjustments.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Coordinates base cluster resupply plan with the unit's higher HQ S4, Support Operations Office, and RAOC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Command Section
Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
Petroleum Liaison Section
Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
Transportation Branch
Support Operations Section

TASK: Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates   (10-6-0200)
(FM 10-67)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 100-15)
(FM 101-5)   (FM 10-52)   (FM 3-4)
(FM 3-5)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                             (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                        (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The group and TA's analysis of the AO are available. TA OPLAN with annexes is available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the intelligence estimate. Status reports, maps and overlays, and other required documents are available. Group is using OPLOG PLNR as a source for planning factors . The S2/S3 has provided feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limit for the estimate. The petroleum and water operations estimate addresses external petroleum and water support only. Support Operations Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by radio, telephone, and courier. The petroleum and water operations estimate is distributed to group staff only. The group is operating in an arid environment. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The petroleum and water operations estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP (oral/written). At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase the support operations estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Petroleum Plans, Requirements, and Distribution Branch and QM Petroleum Liaison Team determine information requirements. 　a. Identify information requirements by analyzing the group commander's restated mission, Analysis of the AO, and TA OPLAN.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Identify policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP.		
c. Identify agencies and documents where required information can be obtained.		
2. Petroleum Plans, Requirements, and Distribution Branch, Water Plans, Requirements, and Distribution Branch, and QM Petroleum Liaison Team assemble required information.		
a. Identify bulk petroleum storage requirements.		
b. Identify water support requirements.		
c. Identify communications requirements with units.		
d. Coordinate with subordinate and attached units on current bulk petroleum and water status capabilities.		
e. Coordinate priority and projected availability of bulk petroleum products with TSC.		
f. Coordinate priority and projected availability of water supply with TSC.		
g. Coordinate personnel information requirements with S1 Section.		
h. Coordinate equipment status with S4 Section.		
i. Coordinate signal support availability with Group Communications.		
j. Coordinate transportation support availability with Transportation Branch.		
k. Coordinate engineer construction support and maintenance support availability with group Facilities Branch and Engineer Command.		
l. Coordinate existing HN petroleum and water support with LOGCAP point(s) of contact and HN representative(s).		
m. Coordinate tactical, existing resources, and intelligence information with S2/S3 Section.		
n. Extract required information from Support Operations Section workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals.		
o. Request additional information from Support Operations channels.		
3. Transportation Branch prepares transportation estimates.		
a. List all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate.		
b. List advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the transportability of the main supply route (MSR).		
c. Identifies current tactical implications for all routes coordinating with higher headquarters transportation office.		
d. Identify and consider security escorts, fire support, and CAS requirements for vehicle convoys.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Prepare road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays using appropriate higher HQ's, eg, Engineers and Military Police.		

4. Support Operations Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission. (10-6-0201)
   a. List all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate.
   b. List the group commander's restated mission.		

5. Support Operation Section and QM Petroleum Liaison Team draft paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations. (10-6-0201)
   a. Prepare brief intelligence summary with appropriate references.
   b. List the effects of the characteristics of the AO on petroleum and water operations and mission accomplishment.
   c. State the effects of the intelligence situation on petroleum and water activities.
   d. List disposition of all tactical units that influence petroleum and water activities.
   e. List all COA provided by S2.
   f. List disposition of all personnel and administration units and installations that have an effect on the petroleum and water situation.
   g. List projected developments within the personnel and internal logistics field that could influence petroleum and water situation.
   h. List disposition of CMO operations that have an effect on the petroleum and water situation.
   i. List developments within the CMO field that could influence petroleum and water operations.
   j. Provide overall status of petroleum and water operating capabilities and any shortfalls that may impact on petroleum and water operations.
   k. Provide current situation, status, and restrictions on the use of HN labor assets.
   l. List all assumptions based on the initial planning guidance.		

6. Support Operations Section and QM Petroleum Liaison Team draft paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. (10-6-0201)
   a. Calculate sufficiency of proposed area for petroleum and water operations.
   b. Calculate total requirements to support proposed responsibility IAW FM 101-10-1/2.
   c. List personnel and tactical impact for each COA.
   d. List petroleum and water deficiencies for each COA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

7. Support Operations Section and QM Petroleum Liaison Team draft paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action.
     a. List advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the petroleum and water mission.
     b. Conduct comparative analysis of each COA, to include methods of overcoming deficiencies for modifications required in each COA.		

8. Support Operations Section and QM Petroleum Liaison Team draft paragraph, Conclusions.
     a. State support ability of mission from an external petroleum and water viewpoint.
     b. Select best COA that can be supported from an external petroleum and water viewpoint.		

9. S2 approves petroleum and water operations estimate.
     a. Verify content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with group commander's guidance.
     b. Present estimate to group commander or XO and staff (oral or written).		

10. Support Operations Section and QM Petroleum Liaison Team distribute the petroleum and water support operations estimate.
     a. Incorporate comments, if required.
     b. Forward petroleum, water support operations and transportation estimates to Operations Officer for approval or modification.
     c. Forward petroleum, water support operations and transportation estimates to other group staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
03-5103.00-0087	Plan Petroleum and Water Supply Program in the Theater of Operations
03-5103.00-0089	Prepare Petroleum and Water Portion of Logistics Annex to Operations Plan (OPLAN) and Contingency Plan
101-519-5203	Plan Petroleum and Water Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
10-6-0201	Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Transportation Branch
Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch

TASK: Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations   (10-6-0201)

(AR 715-27)	(DOD 4140.25-M)	(FM 10-115)
(FM 101-5)	(FM 10-52)	(FM 10-52-1)
(FM 10-67)	(FM 10-67-1)	(FM 3-100.4)
(FM 3-21)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)
(FM 55-1)	(FM 55-10)	(FM 55-30)
(MIL-HDBK 200G)	(MIL-STD 290E)	(STANAG 2115)
(TB MED 577)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The higher headquarters OPLAN/OPORD has been received. The HHC, Petroleum Group, has been required to relocate to a new AO. HHC and subordinate/attached units are set up and ready to commence operations on a 24-hour basis. The group is required to develop a support plan to support its mission in the assigned areas. The commander and staff have completed their mission analysis. The Group is using OPLOG PLNR as a source for planning factors. The fuel consumption estimate, bulk petroleum supply estimate, support estimate, TSOP, engineer water source data, unit status, and other applicable source documents are available. GS and DS petroleum and water requirements are known or anticipated. A base cluster defense plan is available. Subordinate and attached units are located from port of entry as far forward into the corps area as practical. The group is operating in an arid environment. SCPE is on hand or field expedient and natural shelters are available. The group commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between him and the staff.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Support plan is prepared IAW FM 101-5 and reflects the group commander's guidance and intent. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase time for planning petroleum and water support operations completion.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Petroleum Plans, Requirements, and Distribution Branch plans bulk petroleum distribution operations. a. Identify distribution and storage requirements by processing petroleum source data.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Identify facilities, equipment, and units required to support distribution and storage operations.		
c. Identify terrain suitable for bulk petroleum distribution operations.		
d. Coordinate for construction and maintenance of terminals and tank farms and pipelines with supporting engineer units as required.		
e. Plan operations to comply with applicable national, state, local, and host nation environment laws.		
2. Water Plans, Requirements, and Distribution Branch plans water support operations.		
a. Identify water supply and storage requirements by reviewing water support data.		
b. List distribution and transportation requirements.		
c. List locations of GS and DS water points.		
d. List routes to and from water points.		
e. List special precautions or water testing that may be necessary by the using unit.		
f. Identify facilities, purification/storage/distribution equipment, and units required to support distribution and storage operations.		
g. Coordinate requirements for issuance of water to civilian personnel and/or use of municipal or private water supplies with the supporting civil affairs command.		
h. Identify backup water support requirements to other U.S. Military services.		
i. Identify support requirements for EPW, civilian refugees operations.		
j. Identify support requirements for force provider operations.		
k. Identify requirements for Theater Water Quality Analysis/Surveillance Program		
3. Plan, Requirements, and Distribution Branch and Facilities plan GS and DS petroleum supply operations.		
a. List DS storage requirements by reviewing bulk petroleum source data.		
b. List DS distribution requirements by reviewing bulk petroleum source data.		
c. List GS distribution requirements by reviewing bulk petroleum source data.		
d. Identify facilities, equipment, and units required to support distribution and storage operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Transportation Branch plans transportation support operations using enablers such as MTS. (55-2-0041, 55-3-5031, 55-3-5032, 55-3-5033, 55-5-0038, 55-5-1413, 55-6-7002, 55-6-7003) 　a. Identify receipt and distribution points. 　b. Identify distribution system or method. 　c. Identify current status of transportation assets. 　d. Prepare overall plans for control and movement of bulk petroleum products by means other than pipeline. 　e. Prepare overall plans for control and movement of water. 5. Petroleum Plans Officer, Water and Petroleum Officer distributes final disposition of petroleum and water support plan. 　a. Inspect contents for completeness, correctness, and compliance with Group Commander's guidance. 　b. Distribute support plan to all appropriate staff sections and higher, lower, and adjacent units IAW TSOP. 　c. Forward petroleum and water support plan through DCO for approval and/or modification.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
03-5103.00-0082	Plan Reconnaissance for Site Selection for Petroleum and Water Storage and Distribution Systems
03-5103.00-0087	Plan Petroleum and Water Supply Program in the Theater of Operations
03-5103.00-0089	Prepare Petroleum and Water Portion of Logistics Annex to Operations Plan (OPLAN) and Contingency Plan
03-5103.00-0091	Supervise Petroleum Water front Operations

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
03-5103.00-0093	Plan Petroleum and Water Distribution System (Fixed Facility)
03-5106.00-0135	Identify Facility and Structure Requirements for Planning and Constructing Pipelines, Terminals, and Facilities
101-540-4014	Manage Water Reconnaissance Operations
101-540-4016	Manage Water Purification Operations
101-540-4018	Manage Water Distribution/Storage Operations
551-721-4335	Prepare Map Overlay
551-722-1410	Route Highway Traffic
551-722-1411	Check/Enforce Highway Movement Priorities
551-722-1417	Regulate Hazardous Material Shipments in All Modes of Transportation
551-722-1419	Monitor Convoy Movement Within a Division Rear Area
O1-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Support Operations Section
Transportation Branch
Facilities Branch
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations   (10-6-0202)
     (<u>FM 10-67</u>)   (FM 10-115)   (FM 10-52)
     (FM 3-100.4)   (FM 3-4)   (FM 3-5)
     (FM 55-1)   (FM 55-10)   (FM 55-30)
     (TB MED 577)

                  ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                      (Circle)

                  COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                            (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The QM Petroleum Liaison Team coordinates Petroleum and Water Support Operations in TOPNs in conjunction with the Early Entry Module of the QM Group (Petroleum and Water) prior to arrival of the QM Group's main body. The HHC, Petroleum Group is providing bulk petroleum and water support operations on a 24-hour basis. GS and DS support requirements are being generated. Planning data, requirements, distribution plan, schedules, overlays, and other pertinent documentation are available. Transportation requirements for movement of bulk petroleum by means other than the pipeline have been generated by the tactical situation. Subordinate and attached units are located from port of entry as far forward into the corps areas as practical. The group is operating in an arid environment. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. The group commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Bulk petroleum and water support is provided IAW group OPORD and group commander's guidance on a 24-hour basis. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase time for coordinating petroleum and water support operations completion.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Support Operations Section coordinates bulk petroleum support operations. (10-6-0200, 10-6-0201)
   a. Monitor petroleum supply operations for compliance with petroleum and water support plan.
   b. Identify distribution requirements by reviewing allocations and priorities as established by the Command Section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Identify availability of product, transportation, and consumer requirements from current petroleum data sources.		
d. Process stock status reports from subordinate units.		
e. Maintain availability data and stock position.		
f. Identify method of transportation for petroleum products.		
g. Coordinate movement of petroleum products through pipelines with Support Operations Section.		
h. Coordinate movement of petroleum products by means other than pipeline with the Transportation Branch.		
i. Prepare movement schedules for distribution of bulk petroleum products to consumer units.		
j. Forward schedules to dispatchers in subordinate units for daily distribution.		
2. Support Operations Section directs water support operations.		
a. Monitor water supply operations for compliance with petroleum and water support plan.		
b. Coordinate with the Quartermaster Bn [Water Supply] for daily water support requirements.		
c. Coordinate water purification operations with the Quartermaster Bn [Water Supply].		
d. Coordinate DS and GS water storage and distribution operations with the Quartermaster Bn [Water Supply].		
e. Coordinate water quality analysis/ surveillance program with the Quartermaster Bn [Water Supply].		
3. Transportation Branch directs distribution and movement of petroleum products by means other than pipeline.		
a. Coordinate with Plans, Requirements, and Distribution Branch for bulk petroleum distribution requirements by rail, highway, air, and water.		
b. Coordinate with supporting transportation units and TRANSCOM for transportation support for movement of petroleum products by rail, highway, air, and water transport.		
c. Identify quantity and type of bulk petroleum allocated for distribution by rail, highway, air, or water.		
d. Program movement of bulk petroleum by rail, highway, air, and water.		
e. Coordinate delivery schedules of bulk petroleum to receiving units with subordinate groups.		
f. Monitor movement of bulk petroleum by rail, highway, air, and water for compliance with group petroleum and water support plan, using MTS.		
g. Coordinate resolutions for transportation delays or problems with the Group Freight Movement Officer.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

h. Prepare appropriate reports of movement activities.
i. Maintain records of movement activities, using MTS.
j. Provide status update of movement activities to Group Freight Movement Officer.
 	
4. Facilities Branch coordinates petroleum system requirements.
   a. Coordinate present and future pipeline requirements with Plans Officer.
   b. Prepare plans for construction and rehabilitation of pipeline terminal facilities.
   c. Coordinate construction, expansion, and rehabilitation of pipeline systems and storage facilities with TSC and supporting engineers.
   d. Monitor construction and rehabilitative efforts for compliance with approved plans.
   e. Monitor supporting engineer GS maintenance activities on petroleum facilities and pipeline systems for compliance with current standards and directives.
   f. Inspect pipeline and terminal facilities for compliance with safety directives and operational readiness.
   g. Reviews batching and scheduling information and pumping orders.
 	
5. Support Operations Section coordinates procedures to be taken in the event of a petroleum spill. (10-6-0200, 10-6-0201)
   a. Ensures cleanup is accomplished IAW AR 600-2, Environmental Guides, FM 5-482, FM 10-67-1, FM 3-100.4, and TSOP.
   b. Coordinates with the Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch to ensure proper procedures are followed in matters such as cleanup and notifications.
   c. Determines the agencies and personnel to be notified outside the group; considers: next higher headquarters, public affairs officer, civil affairs officer, Military Sealift Command, fire department, post authorities, facility engineers, and supporting engineer units.
   d. Monitors notification and cleanup activities to resolve shortfalls.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
101-519-5201	Evaluate the Petroleum Environment Stewardship Program
101-519-5202	Evaluate Accountability and Quality Surveillance
101-519-5203	Plan Petroleum and Water Operations
101-519-5204	Plan for Class III Supply Point Operations
101-519-5205	Evaluate Petroleum Pipeline Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
10-6-0200	Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates
10-6-0201	Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations
10-6-0202	Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations
10-6-0203	Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs
10-6-0206	Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities
10-6-4062	Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch
              Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory

TASK: Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs (10-6-0203)
    (FM 10-52)   (FM 10-52-1)   (FM 10-67)
    (FM 10-67-1)   (FM 10-67-2)   (FM 3-100.4)

                ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                        (Circle)

                COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                              (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The QM Petroleum Liaison Team coordinates Quality Surveillance/Safety Program in TOPNs in conjunction with the Early Entry Module of the QM Group (Petroleum and Water) prior to arrival of the QM Group's main body. The HHC, Petroleum Group is coordinating bulk petroleum and water support on a 24-hour basis. GS and DS support requirements are being generated. Current directives, quality surveillance and safety programs, and TSOP are available. Product samples are being drawn from storage areas. The base laboratory is an installation that can perform complete specification and procurement acceptance testing of petroleum products. Distribution plan, schedules, overlays, and other pertinent data are available. Subordinate and attached units are located from port of entry as far forward into the corps area as practical. The group is operating in an arid environment. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. The group commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between him and the staff. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Quality surveillance and safety programs are conducted IAW the TSOP and current directives. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase time needed for quality surveillance and safety program.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch monitors quality surveillance program.
    a. Identify standard products requirements by reviewing product specifications and applicable directives. Develop and distribute the environmental/safety SOP
    b. Prepare quality surveillance guidance and directives for subordinate units.
    c. Monitor petroleum laboratory testing for compliance with current directives.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Monitor test results to ensure products are within specification requirements. e. Coordinates with Quartermaster Base Lab Team and Quartermaster Liaison Detachments(s) as required. f. Enforce environmental stewardship protection procedures. g. Enforce safety procedures.		
* 2. Petroleum Surveillance Officer/Petroleum NCO supervise base laboratory operations. a. Coordinate area petroleum laboratory support with subordinate units. b. Provide technical assistance. c. Monitor laboratory tests of petroleum products for quality surveillance compliance with test procedures. d. Supervise preparation of test reports. e. Coordinates with Quartermaster Detachment Team(s),as required. f. Forward test reports to Plans, Requirements and Distribution Branch. g. Enforce environmental stewardship protection procedures. h. Enforce safety procedures.		
3. Quartermaster Base Laboratory Team operates the laboratory. a. Document receipt of petroleum product samples. b. Perform appropriate tests on product samples received. c. Recommend disposition of petroleum products that are contaminated or that affect the operation of military equipment. d. Recommend disposition of captured petroleum stocks, incorrectly marked products, and products whose markings have been destroyed. e. Prepare test reports. f. Maintain functional files. g. Perform unit and preventive maintenance on laboratory equipment. h. Employ environmental stewardship protection procedures. i. Employ safety procedures.		
4. Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch and Quartermaster Base Petroleum Laboratory Team monitors' safety program. a. Provide petroleum standards from the Army Petroleum Center, as required. b. Assist units with reporting and advising them on cleanup of petroleum spills. c. Identify safety requirements by reviewing TSOP and appropriate directives.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Prepare safety directives for subordinate units. e. Monitor petroleum operations for compliance with safety directives. f. Perform periodic site inspections for adherence to program directives.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
01-5103.30-2120	Establish Safety Program for Petroleum and Water Operations
03-5103.00-0004	Monitor Sampling of Petroleum Products
101-523-1300	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR FLASH POINT BY TAG CLOSED TESTER (D-56)
101-523-1301	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR DISTILLATION OF PETROLEUM PRODUCTS (D-86)
101-523-1302	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR PRECIPITATION NUMBER OF LUBRICATING OILS (D-91)
101-523-1303	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR FLASH POINT AND FIRE POINT BY CLEVELAND OPEN CUP (D-92)
101-523-1305	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR SAPONIFICATION NUMBER OF PETROLEUM PRODUCTS (D-94)
101-523-1307	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR WATER AND SEDIMENT IN CRUDE OILS (D-96)
101-523-1308	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR POUR POINT OF PETROLEUM OILS (D-97)
101-523-1310	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR DETECTION OF COPPER CORROSION FROM PETROLEUM PRODUCTS BY THE COPPER STRIP TARNISH TEST (D-130)

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
101-523-1311	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR SAYBOLT COLOR OF PETROLEUM PRODUCTS (SAYBOLT CHROMOMETER METHOD) (D-156)
101-523-1312	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR CONRADSON CARBON RESIDUE OF PETROLEUM PRODUCTS (D-189)
101-523-1313	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR CONE PENETRATION OF LUBRICATING GREASES (D-217)
101-523-1315	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR GASOLINE DILUENT IN USED GASOLINE ENGINE OILS BY DISTILLATION (D-322)
101-523-1318	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR EXISTENT GUM IN FUELS BY JET EVAPORATION (D-381)
101-523-1322	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR ASH FROM PETROLEUM PRODUCTS (D-482)
101-523-1323	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR RAMSBOTTOM CARBON RESIDUE OF PETROLEUM PRODUCTS (D-524)
101-523-1324	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR OXIDATION STABILITY OF GASOLINE (INDUCTION PERIOD METHOD) (D-525)
101-523-1325	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR REFRACTIVE INDEX AND REFRACTIVE DISPERSION OF HYDROCARBON LIQUIDS (D 1218)
101-523-1327	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR ANILINE POINT AND MIXED ANILINE POINT OF PETROLEUM PRODUCTS AND HYDROCARBON SOLVENTS (D-611)
101-523-1328	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR ACID NUMBER OF PETROLEUM PRODUCTS BY POTENTIOMETRIC TITRATION (D-664)
101-523-1329	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR OXIDATION STABILITY OF AVIATION FUELS (POTENTIAL RESIDUE METHOD (D-873)
101-523-1330	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR SULFATED ASH (D-874)
101-523-1331	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR FOAMING CHARACTERISTIC OF LUBRICATING OILS (D-892)
101-523-1333	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR OXIDATION STABILITY OF LUBRICATION GREASES BY THE OXYGEN BOMB METHOD (D-942)
101-523-1334	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR EVAPORATION LOSS OF LUBRICATING GREASES AND OILS (D-972)
101-523-1335	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR ACID AND BASE NUMBER BY COLOR-INDICATOR TITRATION (D-974)
101-523-1338	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR PETROLEUM MEASUREMENT TABLES (D-1250)

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
101-523-1339	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR DETERMINING THE WATER WASHOUT CHARACTERISTIC OF LUBRICATING GREASES (D-1264)
101-523-1340	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR SULFUR IN PETROLEUM PRODUCTS (LAMP METHOD) (D-1266)
101-523-1341	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR pH OF ANTIFREEZE, ANTIRUST AND COOLANT (D-1287)
101-523-1342	PERFORM STANDARD TEST METHOD FOR DENSITY, RELATIVE DENSITY (SP GR) OR API GRAVITY OF CRUDE PETROLEUM AND LIQUID PETROLEUM PRODUCTS BY HYDROMETER METHOD (D-1298)
101-523-4400	DEVELOP AND MONITOR LABORATORY PROCEDURES
101-523-4401	DEVELOP AND MONITOR A FIRE AND SAFETY PROGRAM
101-523-4402	DEVELOP AND MONITOR A ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL PROGRAM
101-523-4404	DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT QUALITY ASSURANCE AND QUALITY SURVEILLANCE PROGRAMS FOR PETROLEUM FACILITIES
101-523-4405	DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT QUALITY ASSURANCE AND QUALITY SURVIELLANCE PROGRAMS FOR PETROLEUM VESSELS AND PIPELINES
101-540-1044	Operate/Perform PMCS on the 350-GPM Diesel Water Pump

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
10-6-0200	Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates
10-6-0201	Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations
10-6-0202	Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations
10-6-0206	Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities
10-6-4062	Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Conduct Petroleum Liaison Activities   (10-6-0206)
      (FM 10-67)   (FM 10-67-1)   (FM 10-67-2)
      (FM 3-4)   (FM 3-5)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                      (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                      (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The HHC, Petroleum Group is coordinating bulk petroleum and water support operations on a 24-hour basis. GS and DS support requirements are being generated. The petroleum program is available. Planning data, requirements and distribution plan, schedules, overlays, and other pertinent documentation are available. U.S. forces are drawing bulk petroleum products from HN facilities. The group is operating in an arid environment. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Liaison is conducted with HN petroleum facilities for petroleum support IAW TSOP. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase time for liaison activity completion.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Petroleum Liaison Section coordinates petroleum/ water logistics assistance programs for Liaison Teams. a. Conducts mission analysis for liaison support requirements b. Coordinates subordinate early entry module through early phases. c. Coordinates with Host Nation petroleum sources for receipt of petroleum / water products into U.S. Military control. d. Coordinates movement of bulk petroleum and water via Host Nation assets. e. Coordinates with customer units for petroleum and water requirements. f. Coordinates with Defense Energy Support Center and higher headquarters for Liaison Team(s) requirements. g. Prepare surveys listing type and capabilities of HN/allied petroleum / water facilities. h. Monitor approved petroleum / water logistics assistance projects for compliance with HN and mutual support agreements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

i. Maintain records of ongoing and completed petroleum / water logistics assistance programs.
   j. Monitors the emplacement of Quartermaster Liaison Team(s) throughout the theater.
 	
2. Petroleum Liaison Section coordinates quality surveillance activities.
   a. Monitor laboratory reports for compliance with U.S. quality standards.
   b. Analyze fuel additive injector requirements within the theater.
   c. Coordinate petroleum laboratory support with the Base Laboratory, as required
   d. Provides limited Quality Surveillance with ground, and aviation test kits.
   e. Report deviations from established standards to affected units and Support Operations Section.
   f. Coordinate Theater Water Quality Analysis/Surveillance with support unit(s) / elements.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
03-5103.00-0093	Plan Petroleum and Water Distribution System (Fixed Facility)
03-5103.00-0098	Determine Requirements for Petroleum in CONUS/OCONUS
101-519-5202	Evaluate Accountability and Quality Surveillance
101-523-3406	Perform Quality Surveillance At Petroleum Facilities

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
10-6-0202	Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section
Support Operations Section

TASK: Establish Liaisons (63-6-4061)
(FM 54-40)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command is providing logistics support for tactical operations. Communications are established with subordinate, supported, and higher headquarters. Communications and information systems are operational and are passing information in accordance with tactical operating procedures. WARNO 1 or OPLAN has been received from supported command, and higher headquarters with AO/AI. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Liaison officers obtain information to meet the combat critical information requirements (CCIR) and relay information necessary to provide support to the supported command.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. XO designates liaison officers based upon commander's guidance and mission, METT-TC, and recommendations of the Support Operations and G3/S2/3 Officers.
   a. Designates liaison officers for higher and supported headquarters, as necessary.
   b. Designates liaison officers for other headquarters, as necessary.		

2. Liaison Officers examine all aspects of command's support operations before departing on liaison tour.
   a. Understand the mission and duties as the liaison officer.
   b. Understand the command's support mission, situation, commander's intent, concept of support, and status of critical supplies.
   c. Obtain current map overlays and copies of orders.
   d. Ensure there is reliable means of communications back to LOC.
   e. Obtain and understand the CCIRs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

3. Liaison officers coordinate with supported command's headquarters.
  a. Report to commander, XO, Support Operations, and briefs current logistics situation.
  b. Establish communications with LOC and update information.
  c. Provide necessary information to each staff section and obtain information to transmit to parent command.
  d. Obtain information about supported command's operations, commander's intent, mission, subordinate elements locations and capabilities, and future operations.
  e. Inform supported command's commander or XO concerning reports dispatched to parent command LOC.
  f. Keep a record of liaison actions during tour.
  g. During liaison tour--
    (1) Keep abreast of the situation of supported command and provide updates to parent command.
    (2) Monitor and assist in the planning process of supported command.
      (a) Advise staff on how to best employ assets of parent command.
      (b) Record all critical information and pass it to parent command as soon as possible (includes specified/implied tasks, mission essential tasks, constraints and limitations.
      (c) Receive and pass all enemy situation templates and other intelligence products to parent command as soon as possible.
    (3) Conduct adjacent command coordination.
 	
4. Liaison officers transmit information to parent staff upon return.
  a. Brief parent command XO and staff on all information received during visit.
  b. Brief all staff sections on detailed information re3ceived during visit and transmit information required by higher headquarters in each staff area of responsibility.
  c. Assist in the conduct of the tactical decision-making process.
 	
5. XO maintains control of liaison officers.
  a. Establishes and maintains liaison and communications with units external to the command.
  b. Ensures exchange of information is completed upon arrival at the LOC.
  c. Ensures liaison officers updates the Support Operations and S2/3 Officers on their unit's status as changes occur.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Ensures liaison officers maintain communications with parent command and remain abreast of parent command's activities. e. Keeps liaison officers briefed on current situations. f. Coordinates liaison officers for LOC defensive requirements in case of an attack.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Petroleum Liaison Section

TASK: Coordinate Host Nation Petroleum and Water Supply Support   (10-6-4062), (FM 10-602)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Combat or field operations are underway and the Petroleum Group is receiving POL and Water requirements from the TSC or CORPS MMC. The operation order indicates that supply/ replenishment of POL and Water requires liaison and coordination between US Military units and Host Nation Support (HNS) organizations. The Group's Petroleum and Water Support Team maintains communications with the Support Operations POL and Water Plans, Requirements, and Distribution Branch. Coordination may be accomplished face to face, by radio, by telephone, or by automation means. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All POL and Water HNS coordination requirements are completed IAW the TSOP and OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Liaison Team coordinates host nation support (HNS) for bulk petroleum and water. a. Calculates bulk petroleum and water HNS requirements. b. Maintains information on locations and capabilities of all HNS petroleum and water organizations/operations. c. Provides Support Operations with listing(s) of locations and capabilities of available HNS petroleum and water organizations/operations. d. Determines mode of transportation required for bulk petroleum and water shipments. 2. Liaison Team coordinates foreign military or government activities. a. Coordinates HNS requirements with appropriate legal, contractual, financial, and civil affairs activities. b. Coordinates HNS agreements with appropriate HN authorities and U.S. legal support elements. c. Conducts inspection(s) of HNS sites to identify any problems related to compatibility with existing US Army equipment. d. Monitors HNS contract performance to ensure compliance with contract agreements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Forwards production reports on the amount, type, and quality assurance for fuel and water provided by HN contractors to the Group Liaison Officer. f. Coordinates delivery of HN petroleum and water with personnel in Support Operations channels and supported units. g. Provides HNS petroleum and water supply status updates to the Group commander and staff, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
03-5103.00-0098	Determine Requirements for Petroleum in CONUS/OCONUS
03-5103.30-1147	Compute Petroleum and Water Requirements for a Unit
03-5108.00-0018	Serve as the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR)
101-519-5203	Plan Petroleum and Water Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Support Operations Section

TASK: Provide Assistance for Supported Command's Logistics Planning   (63-6-4012) (FM 100-10)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)
   (FM 3-4)   (FM 63-3)   (FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                         (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                      (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Support Operations officer has responsibility for consolidating CSS and CHS information to be input into the supported command's OPLAN/OPORD. This information, when finalized, will be used to prepare the service support annex. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communications with higher and lower HQ. The Support Operations officer has digitized or paper copies of status reports, maps, overlays/overlay data, and Logistics Preparation of the Theater (LPT). Unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The Support Operations officer has the supported commander's initial guidance and restated mission for use in preparation of the input document/briefing. SCPE is on hand, or field expedient natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Support Operations officer's input conforms to the supported commander's concept of operations and is sufficient for preparation of the OPLAN/OPORD and the support annex. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase input times.

NOTE: Subtasks and performance measures related to Combat Health Services apply to the DISCOM only.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Support Operations personnel collect/consolidate data for input to the supported command's CSS and combat health service support plans.
  a. Identify the types and amounts of CSS and CHS assets needed to support the supported command's OPLAN/OPORD.
  b. Identify the supported command's priorities for the provision of supplies and services, maintenance, transportation, and CHS assets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. List the types and amounts of CSS and CHS assets required/available to support the commander's concept of operations.		
d. Prepare data reports on mission capable status of missile systems, weapons systems, and other key vehicles and items of equipment.		
e. Prepare information documents detailing contact team availability for current on-site repairs, in coordination with the supported command's maintenance staff element.		
f. List known CSS and CHS shortfalls and recommended solutions.		
g. Request information from higher level G3 staff planners to identify the probable CSS "slice" elements to be located in the supported command's area of operations.		
h. List the probable CSS "slice" elements to be located in the supported command's area of operations.		
i. Develop CSS and combat health service support distribution plan to support supported command's tactical operations.		
j. Provide the supported command's CSS planners with a consolidation of CSS and CHS listings, reports, schedules, etc., in the format prescribed by FM 101-5 and the unit's TSOP.		
2. Support Operations commodity managers provide assistance for supply support planning.		
a. Coordinate supply support using appropriate CSS STAMIS, BFACS, wire, or radio.		
b. Coordinate supply priorities with the supported command's CSS planners using BFACS, radio, or wire.		
c. Coordinate supply sustainment controls with the supported command's CSS planners, using appropriate BFACS, wire, or radio.		
d. Provide instructions for request, storage, and distribution of supplies.		
e. Identify supported command's policies and procedures for participation in weapon system replacement.		
f. Develop night and reduced visibility resupply plans.		
g. Coordinate locations of all forward supply points with the supported command's CSS planners, and the CSS operator using BFACS, radio, or wire.		
h. Identify foreign nation or local procurement channels for additional supply requirements.		
i. Provide supply support input to the supported command's distribution managers for inclusion into the distribution plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

3. Support Operations personnel provide planning assistance for maintenance support.
   a. Coordinate maintenance priorities with the supported command's CSS planners, using appropriate communications and information systems.
   b. Provide instructions for request, disposition, and repair of equipment.
   c. Coordinate cannibalization and controlled exchange policies with the supported command's CSS planners, using appropriate communications and information systems.
   d. Provide instructions for emergency destruction of equipment and supplies.
   e. Identify command maintenance participation in weapon system replacements in coordination with property Book and Class VII elements.
   f. Develop a back-haul plan for the evacuation of equipment and supplies from forward locations.
   g. Maintain locations of all maintenance collection points.
   h. Provide maintenance support input to the supported command for inclusion into the distribution plan.		

4. Support Operations personnel provide planning assistance for transportation and movement control support.
   a. Coordinate motor transportation priorities with the supported command and the higher headquarters movement control elements, using appropriate communications and information systems.
   b. Provide instructions for transportation requests.
   c. Coordinate aerial resupply plan with the supported command's CSS planners, and higher headquarters' Support Operations Section, using appropriate communications and information systems.
   d. Identify transportation assets required for mass casualty contingencies.
   e. Coordinate additional transportation requirements with the movement control and distribution elements, using appropriate BFACS, DAMMS-R, radio, or wire.
   f. Develop plans to establish in transit visibility of transportation assets.
   g. Provide transportation support input to the supported command's for inclusion into the distribution plan.		

5. Support Operations personnel provide planning assistance for Field Services support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Coordinate procedures for requesting field services support with supported command's CSS planners, higher headquarters' Support Operations Section or with field service support units operating in the area, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
 	
 b. Coordinate clothing exchange and shower support with supported command's CSS planners and higher headquarters Support Operations Section, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
 	
 c. Coordinate bakery support with supported command's CSS planners and higher headquarters Support Operations Section, using appropriate BFACS.
 	
 d. Coordinates locations of MA collection points with the supported command's CSS planners and higher headquarters' Support Operations Section, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
 	
 e. Provides instructions for the evacuation of remains to collection points.
 	
 f. Provides Field Services support input to the supported command's CSS planners for inclusion into the distribution plan.
 	
 6. Supported command's Medical Operations Branch develops the CHS plan (DISCOM ONLY).
    a. Identifies requirements, resources, policies, and procedures to be incorporated in the CHS plan by reviewing CHS estimate.
    b. Identifies specified and implied tasks by following the supported command OPLAN and service support plan.
    c. Formats the CHS plan IAW FM 8-55.
    d. Forwards completed plan to supported command Surgeon for approval or modification, using appropriate BFACS.
    e. Briefs plan to the Support Operations Officer and supporting unit commander for approval or modification.
    f. Provides CHS plan to the S2/3 Section for distribution as either the CHS plan or as CHS annex to the DISCOM OPORD, using appropriate BFACS.
 	
 7. Support Operations Section plans support of offensive operations.
    a. Develops increased consumption plans for all support due to increased maneuver activity.
    b. Plans forward positioning of ammunition, POL, and maintenance elements as lines of support increase.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Plans use of preplanned or pre-configured push packages, if communications break down.
d. Plans increased use of aircraft or airdrop for resupply.
e. Plans for uploading as much supplies as possible.
 	
8. Support Operations Section plans support of defensive operations.
  a. Develops plan for stockpiling limited amounts of ammunition and POL in centrally located battle positions in coordination with the supporting command's CSS planners, using appropriate BFACS.
  b. Plans positioning of support elements in depth throughout defensive area.
  c. Plans resupply using infiltration during periods of limited visibility to reduce chances of threat interference.
  d. Develops plans for increased demands for Class IV items and transportation assets to haul supplies.
  e. Develops plan for increased patient loads in health facilities and greater patient transportation requirements.
 	
9. Support Operations Section supports retrograde operations.
  a. Plans positioning of CSS elements in depth and echelon rearward in coordination with the supported command's CSS planners and higher headquarters' Support Operations Section.
  b. Develops plans to limit forward movement of supplies in coordination with the supported command's CSS planners and higher headquarters' Support Operations Section.
  c. Plans evacuation of supplies and equipment to planned fallback points in coordination with the supported command's CSS planners and higher headquarters' Support Operations Section.
  d. Develops plans for increased expenditure of ammunition and fuel consumption.
  e. Develops supplies and equipment to destruction plans (except medical) in coordination with the higher headquarters CSS planners.
  f. Plans relocation of medical units and alternate means of evacuation in coordination with the supported command Medical Operations Branch.
  g. Performs unit and CSS coordination using appropriate communications and information systems.
 	
10. Support Operations Section provides input into the supported command service support plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Provides supply status information (Materiel and Services). b. Provide transportation status information (Materiel and Services). c. Provides services information, e.g., field services, and mortuary affairs. (Materiel and Services). d. Provides command's CHS plan for publication as a separate annex or paragraph 5 of the service support plan. e. Consolidates CSS and CHS input to format a draft service support plan. f. Forwards draft log plan to the commander for approval or modification. g. Provides command's CSS and CHS approved plan to the supported command's logistics planners.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4000	Receive the Mission
63-6-4001	Conduct Mission Analysis
63-6-4002	Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques
63-6-4003	Develop Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4004	Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation
63-6-4005	Analyze Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4006	Prepare Operations Plan/Order
63-6-4007	Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays
63-6-4009	Develop Road Movement Order
63-6-4010	Develop Occupation Plan

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4011	Plan Area Tactical Operations
63-6-4013	Plan Base Cluster Operations
63-6-4014	Supervise Advance/Quartering Party Activities
63-6-4015	Establish Command Post (Forward)
63-6-4016	Establish Communications
63-6-4017	Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements
63-6-4018	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters
63-6-4019	Establish the Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas
63-6-4020	Operate the Logistics Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center
63-6-4021	Supervise Support Operations Subelement Functions
63-6-4022	Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP)
63-6-4023	Coordinate Internal Logistics
63-6-4029	Coordinate Combat Health Support
63-6-4030	Coordinate Transportation Support
63-6-4031	Coordinate Field Services Support
63-6-4032	Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination
63-6-4033	Perform Assessment and Recovery Operations
63-6-4034	Coordinate Support for Regeneration Activities
63-6-4035	Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center
63-6-4036	Supervise Operations Security Program
63-6-4037	Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
63-6-4038	Maintain Communications
63-6-4039	Provide Human Resources Support - Personnel Services
63-6-4040	Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services
63-6-4041	Conduct Command Religious Support Program
63-6-4042	Provide Command and Control
63-6-4043	Provide Automation Support
63-6-4046	Manage Replacement of Weapons Systems
63-6-4047	Operate Rear Tactical Operations Center
63-6-4048	Provide Intelligence Support
63-6-4049	Direct Response to Threat Actions
63-6-4050	Direct Area Damage Control Operations
63-6-4303	Combat Battlefield Stress
63-6-4326	Perform Risk Management Procedures
63-6-4850	Direct Deployment Alert Activities
63-6-4852	Operate the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)
63-6-4853	Supervise Deployment/Redeployment Activities
63-6-4854	Update Movement Plan/Order
63-6-4855	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4856	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support
63-6-4857	Coordinate Family Assistance Support
63-6-4858	Coordinate Deployment Training Support
63-6-4859	Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions
63-6-4860	Provide Deployment Logistics Support
63-6-4861	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities
63-6-4862	Coordinate Onward Movement
63-6-4863	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support
63-6-4864	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities
63-6-4865	Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment
63-6-4866	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order
63-6-4867	Provide Redeployment Support
63-6-4868	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities
63-6-4869	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities
63-6-4870	Coordinate Home Station Activities
63-6-4871	Direct Integration Activities
63-6-4872	Plan Command Deployment in a Peacetime Environment
63-6-4873	Plan Command Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order
63-6-4874	Plan Command Redeployment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Support Operations Section
Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Operate the Logistics Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (63-6-4020)
(<u>FM 100-10</u>)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 3-4)
(FM 63-3)   (FM 8-10)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Supported units' operations are ongoing and CSS/CHS requirements are being generated. The LOC has been set up and divided into two areas (the logistics and the tactical operations support areas). Staff officers and NCOs, assigned to the LOC, are at their duty stations. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded to the staff elements. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower, are available. Tactical and logistics information are continuously received by digital, radio, telephone, and messenger. SCPE is on hand or field expedient natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Continuous logistics support is provided to sustain operations on a 24-hour basis. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase supervisory, managerial, administrative, and coordination completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Support Operations Officer/leaders supervise external logistics support activities. a. Develops two shift schedules that maintain 24-hour operations. b. Conducts detailed shift change briefings. c. Coordinates logistics policies and mission changes among subordinate units with staff and supported units, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire. d. Monitors subordinate units' operational stockage levels by reviewing CSSCS reports to ensure assets do not exceed requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Directs, redirects, cross-levels or masses logistics assets as driven by changing requirements and priorities in support of operations using BFACS, wire, or radio. f. Directs redistribution of logistics workloads as driven by changing requirements and priorities in support of operations using BFACS, radio, or wire. g. Directs revision of customer lists as driven by changing requirements, workloads, and priorities using BFACS, radio, or wire. h. Supervises coordination of weapons system replacement missions as directed by the G4. i. Monitors in transit visibility of sustainment resources in and outbound using BFACS and movement tracking systems, to ensure efficient response to supported command's directions. j. Supervises maintenance of the logistics analog/digital situation map(s). k. Supervises preparation and submission of subordinate units' terrain requirement data to the RCPOC using BFACS, radio, or wire. l. Monitors operations of the logistics area of the LOC to ensure compliance with service support annex and commander's guidance. m. Supervises logistics contingency planning. n. Assigns liaison personnel to supported units, as required. o. Provides operational briefings to the commander, as required, that provide actual status of logistics support to the supported units. p. Maintains situational awareness, at all times, using appropriate BFACS. q. Identify critical logistics items or services for inclusion into the Commander's Tracked Items List. r. Coordinates additional logistics support from EAD as required. 2. Support Operation personnel coordinates' logistics support within area of responsibility. a. Maintain current analog/digital situation map(s) with all unit and facility locations posted within 50 meters. b. Maintain current customer list that reflects changing requirements, workloads, and priorities of tactical operations. c. Maintain current logistics support overlay that shows locations of logistics facilities and their hours of operations. d. Monitor CSSCS reports from subordinate units to determine if requirements exceed capabilities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Coordinate redistribution of stock and/or assets to accommodate changing requirements and priorities.		
f. Coordinate stock status projections with Support Operations Section commodity managers.		
g. Disseminate logistics mission changes to subordinate units, using appropriate BFACS.		
h. Maintain a current mission essential item chart, which reflects short supply items; command controlled items, and current equipment combat losses.		
i. Coordinate reorganization requirements with G3 Section and supported units.		
j. Maintain total asset and in transit visibility of the distribution pipeline at all times using appropriate BFACS, logistics and CHS STAMIS, radio, or wire.		
k. Monitor status of all items on the Commander's Tracked Items List.		
3. Support Operations Officer supervises weapons system replacement missions assigned by supported command.		
a. Coordinates weapon system replacement linkup at the designated subordinate unit(s).		
b. Coordinates crew replacement with the replacement-regulating element based on replacement requirements identified in SIDPERS reports, using appropriate BFACS, radio or wire.		
4. Support Operations Officer prepares FRAGO to service support order.		
a. Prepares the operational changes as specified based on supplemental information.		
b. Completes the message IAW TSOP and within the time specified by commander or S2/3's guidance.		
c. Forwards draft FRAGO to S2/3 element for review.		
d. Forwards FRAGO to S2/3 Officer for final approval.		
e. Coordinates with S2/3 for distribution of FRAGO to all affected elements, using appropriate means such as BFACS or messenger.		
5. Support Operations personnel maintain branch and section workbooks. NOTE: Branch and section workbooks may vary in format based on TSOPs and the availability of automation tools.		
a. Annotate information from incoming messages and reports under appropriate heading and cross-reference.		
b. Annotate in "Remarks" informal evaluation of the information, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Delete all obsolete information from workbook.
    d. Format workbook IAW TSOP.
 	
6. Support Operations personnel maintain branch and section daily staff journal and journal files.
NOTE: Branch and section daily staff journal and journal files may vary in format based on TSOPs and the availability of automation tools.
    a. Post all entries as prescribed by TSOP.
    b. Post data immediately upon receipt or dispatch or occurrences of events.
    c. Describe accurately and concisely information or event(s) that have occurred.
    d. Specific actions taken upon receipt or dispatch of information.
    e. Maintain current file that contains material necessary to support entries in the daily staff journal.
 	
7. Support Operations Officer coordinates internal logistics system support with S1 and S4.
    a. Maintains current status of subordinate units' personnel strengths that directly affect the support mission.
    b. Maintains current status of subordinate elements' supplies and equipment operational readiness that directly affect the support mission.
 	
8. Support Operations Officer monitors tactical situation.
    a. Monitors tactical situations for indications that may affect logistics mission accomplishment.
    b. Identifies base locations for repositioning based on tactical situation in coordination with S2/3 Section and RCPOC.
    c. Monitors NBC implications on current operations.
    d. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4012	Provide Assistance for Supported Command's Logistics Planning
63-6-4021	Supervise Support Operations Subelement Functions
63-6-4035	Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center
63-6-4113	Conduct Support Operation Activities

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Support Operations Section
                S2/S3 Section

TASK: Supervise Support Operations Subelement Functions   (63-6-4021)
      (FM 101-5)   (FM 100-10) (FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-4)   (FM 63-3)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The main body has arrived at a new operational site and staff personnel have linked up with their respective advance elements. The Support Operations Officer (subordinate to, or in coordination with the S2/3) is supervising external logistics support activities. External logistics support operations have continued without interruption during the movement to the new site. Efforts to set up and improve staff and mission-related work areas and activities are based on provisions found in the command's TSOP and may be adjusted based on METT-TC or command guidance. Basic communications nets have been established with higher HQ, supporting units/elements, and supported units/elements. Documents such as logistics status reports, maps, overlays, and FRAGOs are being forwarded to the responsible staff element by radio, wire, automation devices, and/or messenger. Logistics Preparation of the Theater (LPT) is available for review. Higher and lower-level TSOPs are available. This task may be performed in a field or urban environment. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Support Operations Officer supervises the fully-operational set up and operation of required logistics support operations work areas within the time limits set by the unit TSOP or command guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase supervisory, managerial, administrative, and coordination completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-
1. Support Operations Officer activates/improves external logistics plans/activities. a. Establishes internal operating procedures IAW the TSOP. b. Implements the area layout plan. c. Implements the communication plan. d. Implements the security plan. e. Coordinates with S6 or other designated communications staff element(s) for CSSCS network management support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-
f. Coordinates with the S6 or other designated communications staff element(s) for additional communications support, as needed. g. Supervises positioning/repositioning of support operations personnel subelements into the LOC. h. Reports operational status, using appropriate BFACS, radio, wire, or messenger. (1) Reports operational status to the commander. (2) Reports operational status to the S2/3. (3) Reports operational status to the supported unit G4 element(s). i. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. j. Establishes communications with supported and supporting CSS and CHS organizations. 2. Support Operations Officer supervises (or coordinates for) the establishment/improvement of support operations functions. a. Supervises (or coordinates for) the establishment/improvement of distribution management functions. b. Supervises the establishment/improvement of medical operations activities. c. Supervises the establishment/improvement of support plans activities. d. Supervises the establishment/improvement of procurement activities. e. Supervises the establishment/improvement of CSS automation management activities. (Or, coordinates with the S2/3 when the automation management activities are considered an "internal" staff responsibility.) f. Establishes (or coordinates for) general supplies activities and management, including: (1) Class I Management Branch and Office. (2) Class II and IV. (3) Class III and water. (4) Class V. (5) Class IX. (6) Medical materiel. (7) Property Book-Class VII. g. Establishes Movement Control Office. h. Establishes or coordinates with the Maintenance Office in the management of:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-
(1) Armament-Combat Vehicle maintenance. (2) Automotive and, Ground Support Equipment maintenance. (3) Communications-Electronics. (4) Aviation maintenance. (5) Missile maintenance. 3. Support Operations Officer establishes physical security. a. Implements security measures IAW the TSOP and the command's defense plan. b. Coordinates support operations personnel security plan requirements with the S2/3 Section and the HQ company commander. c. Implements ADP area access control measures IAW the security plan and the TSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4007	Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays
63-6-4010	Develop Occupation Plan
63-6-4011	Plan Area Tactical Operations
63-6-4016	Establish Communications
63-6-4018	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters
63-6-4019	Establish the Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
Support Operations Section

TASK: Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP)   (63-6-4022)
(<u>DA PAM 710-2-2</u>)   (AR 710-2)   (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-4)   (FM 63-2)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5
	(Circle)				

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command's automation management officer has been directed to prepare/update the Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP); command guidance is that the COOP address steps to take if systems are degraded or shut down during combat operations. The OPLAN and TSOP address basic COOP considerations and current status of the logistics support communications and information systems is available. Unit automation management personnel are providing both internal and external customer support in the operation and sustainment of the Army's Combat Service Support (CSS) Standard Army Management Information Systems (STAMIS) and the Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS). Automation support includes installation and validation of application software, limited hardware repair, new equipment fielding of STAMIS and CSSCS devices, loading and testing STAMIS interim change packages, restoration/reconfiguring of corrupt files and customer assistance visits. Communications nets have been established with higher HQ, supporting units/elements, and supported units/elements. Documents such as logistics status reports, maps, overlays, and FRAGOs are being forwarded to the responsible staff elements by radio, wire, automation devices, and/or messenger. Logistics Preparation of the Theater (LPT) is available for review. Higher and lower-level TSOPs are available. This task may be performed in a field or urban environment. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack.
  This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: COOP provides the command with policies and procedures to maintain continuity of operations in the event of automated systems degradation or failure IAW TSOP and OPLAN.   At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase COOP completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Automation systems support personnel provide procedures for backup data storage.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Coordinate with the higher headquarters' automation office/systems to determine specific elements providing backup ADP equipment support for operations under the COOP. b. Provide instructions for storing magnetic backup media at a location other than the current operational site.		

2. Automation systems support personnel provide short-term outage measures.
  a. Provide instructions for processing high-priority requests.
  b. Provide instructions for processing low-priority requests.
  c. Provide instructions for updating records when system is operational again.		

3. Automation systems support personnel provide long-term outage measures.
  a. Provide instructions for processing requests.
  b. Provide instructions for processing high-priority requests on a post-post basis.
  c. Provide instructions for setting up manual stock records IAW DA PAM 710-2-2.		

4. Automation system support personnel coordinates' user-level assistance, using appropriate communications and information systems.
  a. Coordinate troubleshooting subordinate unit equipment with supporting automation support element to determine problem areas and solutions.
  b. Coordinate request for software replacement with higher headquarters' automation support office.
  c. Coordinate limited maintenance hardware support with higher headquarters' automation support office.
  d. Coordinate user-level sustainment training with higher headquarters' automation support office.
  e. Integrate data bases for new units.
  f. Coordinate assistance for staffs and units for property book, transportation supply, and maintenance management STAMIS.		

5. Automation systems support personnel provide for continuity of ADP operations.
  a. Identify ADP back-up unit for subordinate units in coordination with higher headquarters' automation support office.
  b. Coordinate instructions for operators in back-up procedures.
  c. Provide COOP to all subordinate units.
  d. Provide COOP assistance to all subordinate and attached units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Monitor execution of subordinate units' Coops for compliance with command's COOP.
f. Provide current status of automated systems to commander.
 	
6. Automation systems support personnel formats COOP.
    a. Consolidate COOP information into the proper format.
    b. Forward COOP to the Support Operations Officer for approval or modification.
    c. Forward approved COOP to all subordinate units, using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S4 Section
        Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
        Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Coordinate Internal Logistics   (63-6-4023)
   (<u>FM 4-30.3</u>)   (AR 220-1)   (AR 710-2)
   (DA PAM 710-2-2)   (FM 3-4)   (FM 63-2)

        ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                           (Circle)

        COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                (Circle)

CONDITIONS: CSS operations are ongoing and both external (mission) logistics and internal logistics requirements are being generated. S4 personnel may operate from field-expedient or natural shelters, under reduced manpower conditions in a field or urban environment. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. The CP and LOC have been established. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Internal supply, maintenance, field services, and transportation operations are coordinated IAW the TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase operational completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S4 Section coordinates internal maintenance operations.
   a. Consolidates subordinate units' maintenance reports to analyze overall equipment readiness.
   b. Provides equipment status reports to commander and other staff sections for mission planning purposes.
   c. Monitors maintenance management system automated data output to assist in forecasting requirements and analyzing performance indicators.
   d. Coordinates current or anticipated maintenance problems with other staff sections and subordinate units, using appropriate BFACS.
   e. Monitors subordinate units' PLL to ensure levels are consistent with requirements established in the TSOP.
   f. Coordinates recovery and evacuation assets with subordinate units to ensure the timely recovery and evacuation of all elements' equipment, using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Monitors controlled substitution program within to ensure compliance with guidance and priorities established by the commander.		
h. Coordinates priority of maintenance efforts and repair time guidelines with the S2/3, Maintenance Office and subordinate units, using appropriate BFACS.		
i. Provides current material readiness briefing to commander and XO, as required.		
2. S4 Section coordinates subordinate unit supply activities.		
a. Monitors subordinate units' supply operations to ensure compliance with TSOP and applicable regulations.		
b. Processes requests for replenishing basic loads to verify requirements and accuracy.		
c. Maintains data on available usage and required rates of Class III and V.		
d. Monitors Class V resupply activities of subordinate units to ensure compliance with established issue controls.		
e. Monitors Class III resupply activities to ensure compliance with established issue controls.		
f. Coordinates schedules and methods of distribution between subordinate and supporting units, using appropriate BFACS.		
g. Coordinates receipt and disposition of captured enemy equipment with S2/3 Section using BFACS.		
h. Maintains property book records of subordinate elements and any separate elements operating in the area of responsibility.		
i. Records adjustments, issues, turn-ins, property losses, and status reports using SPBS-R programs.		
j. Calculates consumption rates for MOPP gear and decontamination supplies.		
k. Maintains commander's critical items list.		
3. S4 Section coordinates services.		
a. Coordinates with Food Service Section for master menu and feeding plan.		
b. Forwards field feeding plan to all organic and attached elements, using appropriate BFACS.		
c. Inspects subordinate units' field fielding operations and ration storage areas to ensure compliance with feeding plan and sanitation regulations.		
d. Coordinates field service requirements for all subordinate units with G4 or supporting field services element, using appropriate BFACS.		
e. Coordinates water requirements for all subordinate units with G4 or supporting water element, using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Designates salvage collection points.		
g. Controls evacuation of salvage IAW TSOP, OPORD, and commander's directives.		
h. Submits requests for mortuary items to G4 or supporting mortuary affairs element, using appropriate BFACS.		
i. Provides food service and field services status briefing to the S4 and commander, as required.		
4. S4 Section coordinates transportation requirements.		
a. Consolidates transportation requirements for all subordinate units.		
b. Coordinates administrative transportation requirements with movement elements using appropriate BFACS.		
c. Requests road clearances for movement of supplies, equipment, or personnel from supporting movement element.		
d. Coordinates transportation for EPW evacuation with the supporting MP element in coordination with S2/3 Section, using appropriate BFACS.		
e. Coordinates transportation assets for evacuation and hospitalization of casualties resulting from NBC warfare with supporting medical and movement elements.		
f. Updates load plans for the HQ in coordination with the HQ company commander.		
g. Inspects subordinate elements' load plans to ensure compliance with TSOP and commander's directives.		
h. Provides internal transportation status report to commander and XO, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Support Operations Section

TASK: Coordinate Combat Health Support   (63-6-4029)
   (<u>FM 8-10</u>)   (FM 3-4)   (FM 63-3)
   (FM 8-10-6)   (FM 8-55)

                     ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                        (Circle)

                     COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                           (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Tactical operations are ongoing and Combat Health Support (CHS) requirements are being generated by supported units. The command's Medical Operations Center personnel are communicating with higher-level medical planners, internal staff, and subordinate medical units. The Medical Operations Center is responsible for planning and overseeing CHS operations for the command. The OPORD with annexes and the higher HQ's service support order have been analyzed by the command's medical staff. The HQs has digital and analog communications with higher and lower HQ. Unit, higher, and lower-level TSOPs; status reports; and maps with overlays have been forwarded to the medical planner's digital devices, or these documents are available in hard copy. Logistics Preparation of the Theater (LPT) is available for review. This task may be performed in a field or MOUT environment. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available.   This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: CHS is continuous from outset of the operation at levels that sustain the momentum of combat operation and are coordinated IAW the service support order and the TSOP.   At MOPP4, predetermined degradation CHS levels are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Medical operations officer directs medical operations activities.
    a. Monitors Implementation of CHS portions of TAMMIS or MC4/TMIP.
    b. Coordinates medical personnel assignments and replacements with surgeon and medical channels and the G1 channels.
    c. Identifies division CHS requirements.
    d. Identifies division CHS priorities.
    e. Coordinates reallocation of medical assets with surgeon and medical channels and other higher HQs elements, as required using the appropriate BFACS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Provides input to higher HQs and the staff service support order using the appropriate BFACS.		
g. Provides analysis of medical threat to the commander, surgeon's office, and appropriate staff elements.		
h. Integrates corps-level CHS augmentation IAW medical support requirements and the TSOP.		
i. Provides daily updates on the status of CHS and services to the commander and higher HQ's surgeon's office.		
j. Forwards routine and special reports IAW the TSOP, using appropriate BFACS.		
2. Chief, Medical Operations Branch coordinates with DSS on medical operations.		
a. Monitors medical priorities throughout unit Area of Operations (AO) to ensure compliance with the CHS plan.		
b. Provides staff medical advice to the commander and commanders of subordinate elements.		
c. Coordinates with adjacent units on health policies, procedures, and medical threats, as necessary, using TAMMIS or MC4/TMIP.		
d. Updates the commander on health related programs, policies, and medical threats, as required.		
e. Monitors MEDEVAC plan for medical and technical sufficiency and compliance with higher HQ's MEDEVAC plan and the unit and higher HQ's TSOP.		
3. Medical Operations Branch coordinates CHS using TAMMIS or MC4/TMIP.		
a. Coordinates patient and evacuation plans with the appropriate higher HQ's staff and with the corps MRO.		
b. Coordinates corps-level CHS for the division with the corps medical brigade or group, as applicable.		
c. Coordinates for aero-medical and ground evacuation with the medical evacuation battalion, or higher HQ staff element, as applicable.		
d. Provides Army airspace and control information to supporting corps air ambulance assets.		
e. Provides road clearance priorities for use of MSRs for supporting corps ground assets in coordination with MCO.		
f. Monitors medical troop strength to determine task organization for mission accomplishment.		
g. Forwards all potential medical intelligence information to the S2/3 Section using the appropriate.		
h. Requests updated threat intelligence information from the S2/3 Section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Requests updated medical intelligence information from the Corps Surgeon.		
j. Monitors the division preventive medicine program to determine and maintain current health and welfare priorities status.		
k. Monitors the mental health program for implementation of stress prevention measures.		
l. Coordinates CSC team support to forward areas with the DSB medical company mental health section.		
m. Monitors optometry services to minimize RTD time during optical fabrication.		
n. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		
4. MOB coordinates patient disposition throughout the AO, using TAMMIS or MC4/TMIP.		
a. Manages the MEDPAR-D system IAW TSOP.		
b. Prepares patient statistical reports IAW TSOP.		
c. Coordinates disposition of patients with the corps MRO.		
d. Forwards patient and/or statistical reports IAW the TSOP.		
5. Medical Materiel Management Branch manages the medical logistics and medical equipment repair program.		
a. Manages the MEDLOG-D IAW FM 4-02.1.		
b. Coordinates emergency medical supply requests with the corps MEDLOG unit, using TAMMIS or MC4/TMIP.		
c. Monitors MEDLOG operations to ensure area and unit-wide Class VIII support across the command.		
d. Monitors higher HQs medical maintenance program to expedite the availability rate of essential medical equipment.		
e. Coordinates medical equipment repairs beyond organic capability with the MEDLOG battalion, using TAMMIS or MC4/TMIP.		
f. Monitors disposition of captured medical materiel IAW the TSOP		
6. MOB analog and digital communications personnel establish radio and wire medical communications systems.		
a. Coordinate digital communications with appropriate S6 Section and with the assigned signal battalion		
b. Establish FM radio communications.		
c. Establish AM radio communications with subordinate medical companies and supporting corps-level medical units.		
d. Coordinate wire communications with unit S6 Section and the assigned signal battalion in that AO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Operate radios IAW the SOI/SSI and TSOP. f. Provide communications updates to the Chief, Medical Operations Branch and commander. 7. Medical Operations Branch develops the CHS plan. a. Identifies requirements, resources, policies and procedures to be incorporated in the CHS plan. b. Identifies specified and implied tasks in the unit OPORD and higher HQs service support order. c. Formats the CHS plan IAW FM 8-55. d. Forwards completed plan to surgeon's office for approval or modification. e. Briefs plan to the commander for approval or modification. f. Provides CHS plan to the S2/3 Section for distribution, using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number　　　　　　　　**Task Title**
63-6-4029　　　　Coordinate Combat Health Support

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Support Operations Section

TASK: Coordinate Transportation Support   (63-6-4030)
      (<u>FM 55-30</u>)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 3-4)
      (FM 55-1)   (FM 55-10)   (FM 63-3)

                 ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                                (Circle)

                 COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                                    (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Tactical operations are ongoing and supported units are generating transportation requirements. Transportation operational methods are influenced by the battle situation. Higher headquarters logistics "slice" elements are operational in the area of responsibility. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents have been forwarded to the commander and/or appropriate staff elements. Service support order is available. The command coordinates operations by telephone, messenger, automation devices, and radio. Although SCPE is on hand, the staff sections may elect to operate in field-expedient and natural shelters. Staff sections may be required to operate under reduced manpower conditions. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions and in a field or urban environment. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Transportation support is continuous from the outset of tactical operations, at levels that sustain combat momentum of supported forces IAW the service support order. At MOPP4, predetermined degradation support levels are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Support Operation Section/Movement Control Office coordinate ground transportation support.
   a. Maintain current status of all command transportation assets.
   b. Coordinate delivery of supplies within the area of responsibility with the supported command's CSS operators.
   c. Coordinate resolutions for transportation delays or problems with all supported elements, using appropriate STAMIS, BFACS, radio, wire or messenger.
   d. Establish transportation priorities, task organization and highway regulation within the area of responsibility.
   e. Monitor transportation operations to ensure assets are committed IAW established priorities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

f. Direct cross-leveling to equalize workload throughout the area of responsibility and to support changing priorities.
   g. Establish delivery schedules of logistics resources.
   h. Forward requests for additional transportation to higher headquarters Support Operations/Movement Control Office.
   i. Provide status updates of ground transportation assets to higher headquarters Support Operations, as required.
   j. Maintain situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio, DAMMS-R, or wire.
   k. Coordinate the expeditious return of empty flatracks located in the area of responsibility to the distribution system.
   l. Maintain intransit visibility of sustainment resources within the area of responsibility using DAMMS-R, appropriate BFACS, MTS, wire, or radio.
   m. Direct, redirect, cross-level or mass transportation assets at critical points based on METT-TC and the commander's guidance.
 	
2. Support Operations/Movement Control Office coordinate air transportation support.
   a. Monitor preplanned airlift resupply request to ensure validation.
   b. Forward airlift resupply requests to movement control element for processing.
   c. Coordinate delivery times and locations with the supported and higher command's movement control elements, using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   d. Coordinate ground support and local transportation requirements for all deliveries in the area of responsibility using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   e. Provide air transportation support status update to the supported and higher headquarters G4 and movement control elements, as required.
 	
3. Support Operations/Movement Control Office coordinate transportation support in an NBC environment, using appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   a. Forecast the impact of NBC attacks on support operations in coordination with the supported command's G4.
   b. Coordinate delivery of contaminated cargo with the supported command's G4 and movement control elements.
   c. Request information on contaminated routes and highway reconnaissance data from subordinate units, RCPOC, supported command's G4 and G3 and movement control elements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Disseminate information on contaminated routes to all subordinate and higher headquarters using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire. e. Coordinate deliberate decontamination of transfer points with the supported and higher command's G3 using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Petroleum Liaison Section
Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch
Support Operations Section

TASK: Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination   (63-6-4032)
(<u>FM 41-10</u>)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 100-10-2)
(FM 14-100)   (FM 3-4)   (FM 63-3)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Combat operations are ongoing and units/elements supported by the command are generating Combat Service Support (CSS) requirements. Foreign military or government activities may augment CSS activities. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded. TSOPs and the service support order are available. Support operations coordinate operations by radio, telephone, automation devices, and messenger. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Foreign Nation Support co ordinations are completed IAW the TSOP and the command's service support order. At MOPP4, pre-designated degradation levels are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Support operations personnel identify available foreign nation support.
    a. Maintain designation and locations of foreign nation support activities in coordination with higher-level CSS planners, support operations personnel, and supporting civil affairs teams.
    b. Provide listing and capabilities of available foreign nation support to staff sections.
    c. Coordinate with supported command's distribution management and commodity and service managers to incorporate foreign nation support into the distribution system.
    d. Coordinate with subordinate commands to ensure foreign nation support procurement plans and policies are carried out IAW the commander's concepts.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Provide technical advice to the commander, his staff, and to subordinate units on procuring foreign nation support resources. 2. Support operations personnel coordinate foreign nation sustainment activities. 　　a. Calculate foreign nation support requirements from data received from other staff sections. 　　b. Coordinate foreign nation support requirements with appropriate legal, contractual, financial, and civil affairs activities. 　　c. Coordinate foreign nation support agreements with appropriate foreign nation authorities and US legal support elements. 　　d. Monitor foreign nation support contract performance to ensure compliance with contract agreements. 　　e. Forward production reports on the amount and type of support provided by foreign nation support contractors to the higher-level CSS planners and commodity managers. 　　f. Coordinate foreign nation support integration of sustainment resources into the distribution system with supported command's CSS operators and subordinate and or receiving units. 　　g. Coordinate inspection and quality control of foreign nation support products and services with the appropriate inspection element. 　　h. Coordinate delivery of foreign nation support supplies and services with the appropriate staff section or supported command's subordinate units using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire. 　　i. Provide foreign nation support status updates to the commander and staff, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct Command Religious Support Program (63-6-4041)
    (<u>FM 16-1</u>)   (FM 3-3)   (FM 3-4)
    (FM 3-5)

                     ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                (Circle)

                     COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                              (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Casualties have occurred during recent tactical operations. Requests for religious support have been received. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. Higher HQ OPORDs, with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlay and other required documents have been forwarded. Unit, higher and lower TSOPs are available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions in a field or urban location. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command and soldier religious support needs are met IAW the TSOP, OPORD, and command directives. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of religious support activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Unit Ministry Team develops a religious support plan.
   a. Lists the religious needs of the unit and commander's guidance.
   b. Establishes religious support priorities.
   c. Coordinates direct and general religious support with higher ministry activity using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   d. Provides staff sections with required input for plans and orders.
   e. Consolidates input to the religious support plan from other staff sections using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   f. Prepares the religious support plan.
   g. Disseminates the religious support plan to all subordinate elements.
 	
2. Unit Ministry Team provides religious support, to include rites and services.
   a. Monitors casualty data to determine required religious services.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Provides worship services, memorial ceremonies, services for the dead, sacraments, rites, and ordinances.
c. Conducts mass or emergency burials IAW current regulations and directives.
d. Provides support to headquarters personnel.
e. Requests supplies and additional transportation requirements from S4 Section.
 	
3. Unit Ministry Team provides pastoral care to soldiers.
   a. Provides pastoral care that counters battlefield shock and trauma.
   b. Conducts pastoral counseling that lessens stress and enhances morale.
   c. Provides religious support for BF cases.
   d. Conducts specialized counseling that enhances morale.
   e. Provides routine pastoral care and counseling to all soldiers.
   f. Conducts pastoral care to casualties at battle site(s).
 	
* 4. Chaplain advises the commander on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare.
   a. Provides information on morale and moral climate of the headquarters that has been personally verified.
   b. Briefs commander on moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and procedures.
   c. Notifies commander immediately of policies perceived as unjust by soldiers.
   d. Notifies commander of disruptive and potential disruptive social patterns.
   e. Notifies commander of possible violations of the laws of war.
   f. Advises commander on policies or procedures affecting soldier rights to the free exercise of religion.
 	
5. Chaplain advises the commander on ethical issues.
   a. Advises the commander on specific methods of improving the ethical climate within the command.
   b. Briefs commander on ethical aspects of policies and leadership.
   c. Briefs the commander on soldier training in ethical and moral decision making.
   d. Emphasizes value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth through sermons, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Performs duties as ethical advocate to the commander in the prevention of dehumanizing treatment of friendly troops, EPW and civilians, the violation of codes of morality, illegal acts, desecration of sacred places, and disrespect for human life.
 	
6. Unit Ministry Team provides information on indigenous religions.
   a. Advises the commander of the impact of indigenous religion(s) in the command's mission.
   b. Advises the commander in developing friendly relations with local religious bodies and civilians.
   c. Identifies human welfare needs caused by combat on indigenous population.
   d. Coordinates alleviation of human welfare needs with foreign nation military and civilians' religious institutions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Provide Automation Support (63-6-4043)
(AR 25-1)　　　　　(FM 100-10)　　　　　(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 　1　2　3　4　5　M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T　P　U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Subordinate, attached, and supported units have requested ADP support. The unit higher and lower TSOPs are available. The OPORD with annexes and the service support order has been analyzed. The STAMIS has been determined. The tactical situation may require implementation of the automated supply system COOP. The unit supporting COOP has been designated. This task may be performed in a field or MOUT environment. Task steps within this task are performed simultaneously. SCPE is on hand for field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Automated logistics support operations are conducted IAW the automation assistance office SOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors seriously limit automation support activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. CSS AMO supports the SARSS. 　a. Coordinates SARSS data management operations with Support Operations and subordinate units. 　b. Transfers data via communication links to higher and subordinate units. 　c. Identifies automated retail supply system support requirements by reviewing SARSS ECP-S submitted by subordinate and attached units. 　d. Prepares SARSS ECP-S. 　e. Forwards SARSS ECP-S to higher AMO. 2. CSS AMO supports the SPBS-R. 　a. Transfers incoming property book data to SPBS-R. 　b. Distributes output to Property Book-Class VII Section. 　c. Coordinates with Property Book-Class VII Section for property book documentation requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Identifies automated property book support requirements by reviewing SPBS-R ECP-S submitted by subordinate and attached units.
    e. Prepares SPBS-R ECP-S.
    f. Forwards SPBS-R ECP-S to higher AMO.
 	
3. CSS AMO supports SAMS.
    a. Transfers incoming maintenance data to SAMS.
    b. Coordinates with maintenance management branches on maintenance documentation requirements.
    c. Distributes reports to maintenance management branches and subordinate units.
    d. Identifies automated maintenance system support requirements by reviewing SAMS ECP-S submitted by subordinate and attached units.
    e. Prepares SAMS ECP-S.
    f. Forwards SAMS ECP-S to higher AMO.
    g. Coordinates SAMS data management operations with maintenance management branches and subordinate units.
 	
4. CSS AMO implements the COOP.
    a. Coordinates COOP with Support Operations Officer.
    b. Coordinates COOP with designated supporting unit using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    c. Provides copy of files to supporting command.
    d. Maintains duplicate files of SARRS supply data, as applicable.
    e. Provides supply documents to supporting unit for processing.
    f. Identifies supply management requirements by reviewing supply management documentation provided by supporting unit.
    g. Provides COOP status update to the commander.
 	
5. CSS AMO manages the SCP program.
    a. Coordinates SCP implementation with supply and services staff, subordinate and attached units.
    b. Provides SCP technical assistance to subordinate and attached units.
    c. Programs SCP to CSS AMO hardware.
 	
6. CSS AMO supports DAMMS-R.
    a. Transfers incoming transportation data to DAMMS-R.
    b. Coordinates with the MCO on transportation documentation requirements.
    c. Distributes reports to transportation managers and subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Identifies automated transportation system support requirements by reviewing DAMMS-R ECP-S submitted by transportation managers. e. Prepares DAMMS-R ECP-S. f. Forwards DAMMS-R ECP-S to higher AMO. g. Coordinates DAMMS-R data management operations with transportation managers and subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S4 Section
        S2/S3 Section
        Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
        Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Direct Area Damage Control Operations   (63-6-4050)
    (FM 100-14)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 3-4)
    (FM 5-103)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                            (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                        (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Threat attacks have caused destruction to units and facilities in the AO. Limited logistics support operations are reinstated. Complete restoration of logistics operations is required for sustainment of combat operations. OPORD, rear operations annex is available. ADC teams are designated. The commander has established ADC priorities. The higher HQ provides limited assistance. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Restoration activities are conducted and additional requirements are coordinated IAW commander's priorities and guidance, OPORD, and TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease ADC activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2/3 Section and S4 Section establish Control and Assessment CP.
  a. Identify personnel requirements for Control and Assessment CP.
  b. Identify established policies and procedures by reviewing the rear operations order and the TSOP.
  c. Set up ADC situation maps.		

2. S2/3 Section and S4 Section coordinate base cluster restoration activities.
  a. Identify requirements and taskings by reviewing ADC plan and TSOP.
  b. Alert Control and Assessment Teams.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Establish ADC communications to transmit all required communications.
    d. Coordinate ADC operations with the supported command HQ G3 and RAOC using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    e. Maintain ADC situation maps.
    f. Establish control of affected subordinate units.
    g. Calculate logistics and CHS effectiveness of subordinate units.
    h. Release operational subordinate units to commanders for continuance of support mission.
    i. Forward unit effectiveness reports to the supported command HQ G3 and RAOC using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    j. Provide ADC operational update to commander using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
 	
3. S2/S3 Section and S4 Section direct recovery activities.
    a. Establish priorities for affected facilities.
    b. Task subordinate elements for rescue and decontamination teams, as required using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    c. Provide locations of decontamination sites to subordinate units using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    d. Identify locations of emergency food, clothing, water, and shelter.
    e. Coordinate emergency treatment and evacuation with the MOB using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
 	
4. S2/S3 Section and S4 Section coordinate additional support requirements.
    a. Coordinate engineer support with the RAOC using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    b. Coordinate MP support with the RAOC using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    c. Coordinate EOD support with the RAOC using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    d. Coordinate labor support with the RAOC using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
    e. Coordinate additional ADC requirements with the supported command HQ G3 and COSCOM G3 Section using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
Transportation Branch
Facilities Branch
Petroleum Liaison Section
Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch
Base Petroleum Laboratory
Unit Ministry Team
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (63-6-4326)
(FM 100-14)   (AR 385-10)   (FM 3-4)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. The Corps and/or division OPORD, with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded. Unit higher and lower TSOPs are available. Safety hazards for personnel and equipment exist. The HQ is deployed in a tactical environment supporting combat operations. Hazards increase as operations intensify. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subjects to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All potential safety problems for tasks are identified and either reduced or eliminated. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase risk management implementation times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Commander and leaders identify risk or safety hazards. a. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in OPLAN/OPORD or FRAGO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks.
c. Integrate safety into every phase of the planning process.
d. Identify the benefits of safety to the missions and the potential cost of risk or safety hazards.
e. Conduct continuous assessment of phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.
 	
* 2. Commander and leaders evaluate risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
    a. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and their corrective actions.
    b. Identify all unwarranted risks.
    c. Compare identified risk to the commander's acceptable level based on stated training objectives.
    d. Calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records.
    e. Describe operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, and low).
    f. Prepare COA that reduces risk.
 	
* 3. Commander and leaders eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.
    a. Select COA that maximize the operation and minimize the risk.
    b. Develop procedures that reduce risk.
    c. Provide guidance that enhances safety in all phases of operation.
    d. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhances safety and reduces risks.
 	
4. Staff personnel employ safety procedures.
    a. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals.
    b. Correct unsafe acts on the spot.
    c. Report all risk and safety violations to commander DISCOM Safety Officer.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
           S2/S3 Section

TASK: Receive the Mission   (63-6-4000)
     (<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 54-30)
     (FM 63-2)   (FM 63-2-1)

              ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                      (Circle)

            COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                         (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander receives notification of a new mission and briefs the XO. The XO briefs the unit's operations officer, who begins preparation of a WARNO to the staff alerting them of the pending planning process. The command's TSOP identifies who is to attend plans/orders briefings and where briefings are normally delivered. Elements designated by the TSOP to participate in the planning process are informed of the new mission and planned briefing time(s)/location(s). Supporting, attached, and subordinate units are furnished with copies of the TSOP to ensure maximum understanding of the planning process. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Initial planning guidance is issued to include: the level of detail to which the staff should plan, the initial time allocation, disposition of liaison officers, authorized movements, and additional tasks the commander wants the staff to accomplish. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for mission receipt phase.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Command Section and/or S2/3 staff leader receives an order via MCS or anticipate a new mission. NOTE: The new mission may come from a WARNO, FRAGO, or OPORD issued by higher headquarters verbally or digitally (using Common Message Processor), or may be derived from an ongoing operation.		

2. The S2/3 Section alerts the staff of the pending planning process, including:
   a. Who is to attend?
   b. Who are the alternates?
   c. Where and when they should assemble?		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

3. S2/3 ensures that staff sections have the tools needed to begin mission analysis.
   a. Posts the higher headquarters order (WARNO, FRAGO, or OPORD) and graphics or the anticipated new mission statement to a web page or places in a shared folder.
   b. Notifies the staff of the location of the order (WARNO, FRAGO, or OPORD) and graphics or new mission statement on the web page or shared folder.
   c. Coordinates with the engineer staff element(s) to gather the digital terrain data coverage of the general area of operations and interest.
   d. Ensures that staff sections possess/obtain needed of unit or higher headquarters SOPs.
   e. Gathers any existing staff estimates (higher HQ and own).
   f. Ensures that staff sections retrieve base order and BOS annexes of higher HQ order, and any particular BOS-specific reference materials and tools.
   g. Coordinates with the XO to ensure that staff leadership is directed to update staff estimates and assemble necessary mission analysis tools.
 	
4. The Command Section and/or S2/3 Section completes initial assessment of the new mission to determine:
   a. Time available from mission receipt to mission execution.
   b. Time needed to plan, prepare for, and execute the mission for own and subordinate units.
NOTE: The most critical part of the assessment is the initial allocation of available time. As a general, the rule, the commander allocates a minimum of two-thirds of the available time for subordinate units to conduct their planning and preparation.
   c. Staff estimates already available to assist planning.
   d. IPB requirements.
 	
5. The Commander issues his initial guidance. Guidance includes, as a minimum:
   a. How to abbreviate the MDMP, if required. If the process is abbreviated, directs which steps are eliminated or reduced in scope.
   b. Initial time allocation.
   c. Liaison officers to dispatch.
   d. Initial reconnaissance to begin.
   e. Authorized movement.
   f. Additional tasks the Commander wants the staff to accomplish.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: This should not be confused with the commander's guidance in mission analysis.		
6. S2/3 Section gathers the tools to conduct IPB and begins development of the intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance (ISR) plan.		
7. S2/3 Section obtains staff input for preparation of initial warning order.		

8. The S2/3 Section prepares initial warning order (WARNO 1). The WARNO includes as a minimum:
  a. Type of operation.
  b. General location of the operation.
  c. Initial time line.
  d. Any movement or reconnaissance.		

9. Command Section or S2/3 Officer approves the WARNO.		
10. S2/3 Section sends the WARNO 1 to supporting and supported units via MCS.		
11. Command Section or S2/3 Officer coordinates dispatch of liaison personnel as directed and provides specific instructions or tasks to be accomplished.		

12. S2/3 Section ensures that the S1 and S4 Sections possess the tools needed to begin mission analysis.
  a. Updates logistics staff and personnel staff estimates as required.
  b. Forwards the higher HQ order (WARNO, FRAGO, or OPORD), graphics, and any particulars S1 and S4 specific reference materials and tools or the anticipated new mission statement.
  c. Forwards copies of any existing personnel staff and logistics staff estimates (higher headquarters and internal).		

13. S2/3 Section publishes the mission order (WARNO).
  a. Completes a quick initial assessment of the new mission focusing on personnel and logistical requirements, adjustments, considerations, and time available to plan.
  b. Reviews the draft mission order with key staff leaders.
  c. Prepares mission briefing for presentation to the Command Section.
  d. Obtains Commander/XO approval of draft order.
  e. Distributes mission order to appropriate unit headquarters and staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
Transportation Branch
Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Conduct Mission Analysis   (63-6-4001)
(<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (FM 100-14)   (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 3-4)   (FM 3-5)

                   ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                        (Circle)

                   COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                            (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The headquarters has received notification of an upcoming operation and the S2/3 has issued a WARNO to the staff. The Headquarters has digital and /or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. The mission of the command is to provide specified logistics support to organic and attached units/elements. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower, are available. Status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents have been forwarded to the Commander and/or operations officer. The responsible staff officer or his/her representative has attended supported commander's operation briefings. LPT is available for review. Coordination with the supported command staff elements concerning additional logistics support based on changing situations and /or revised command guidance. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and level I ground attack threat forces attack.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Specific tasks necessary to accomplish the tentative support mission and constraints on command's actions are identified, clarified, and documented. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for mission analysis.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Staff Sections exchange information. a. Identify IR/PIR.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prepare an information collection plan.		
c. Collect information from all available sources.		
d. Record all incoming information.		
e. Assess the significance, reliability, and completeness of incoming information.		
f. Develop assumptions that are logical, realistic, and positively stated, when facts are not available.		
g. Provide pertinent information to command section and appropriate staff sections via BFACS.		
* 2. Executive Officer supervises staff mission analysis.		
a. Designates staff members required to attend mission analysis briefing.		
b. Designates time and location of staff mission analysis.		
c. Briefs principal staff members on commander's mission analysis.		
d. Translates major tasks to specific objectives based on intents of commander and supported commanders.		
e. Provides mission analysis guidance based on commander's guidance.		
f. Provides CCIR to staff officers.		
g. Manages CCIR as directed by the commander.		
h. Resolves all staff conflicts.		
i. Inspects results of staff mission analysis for compliance with commander's guidance.		
3. Staff Sections analyze mission.		
a. Secure maps of tentative operational areas.		
b. Prepare LPB for each sustainment function using LPT.		
c. Identify the intent of supported commander and the commander two echelons above.		
d. Dissect supported command's concept of operations statement to identify all possible missions and tasks.		
e. Examine task organization in order to understand the higher headquarters' mission.		
f. Identify CCIR.		
g. Identify specified and implied tasks.		
h. Construct a tentative list of essential tasks.		
i. Identify asset shortfalls by comparing tentative task with available assets.		
j. Identify operational limitations.		
k. Prepare preliminary mission statement.		
l. Identify broad C3CM employment considerations.		
m. Prepare recommended operational risk levels information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
n. Submit facts, assumptions, and conclusions with recommendations for each sustainment function. * 4. Commander/Executive Officer completes mission analysis. a. Approves staff mission analysis results. b. Restates mission in clear, concise statements that contains WHO, WHAT, WHEN, WHERE, and HOW in the order in which they are to be accomplished. c. States planning options to be or not to be considered. d. Provides guidance for deception operation and sustainment priorities. e. Provides acceptable levels of risk for mission accomplishment. f. Disseminates the restated mission as a warning order to subordinate commanders using the appropriate BFACS. g. Modifies the restated mission when new essential task are revealed, or the situation changes. * 5. Commander/Executive Officer develops time plan for operational planning. a. Identifies complexity of mission and planning requirements. b. Calculates total time available using reverse planning process. c. Assigns time limitations for each step of the command estimate process. d. Disseminates time plan to all staff sections using the appropriate BFACS. e. Enforces CE time plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques
            (63-6-4002)
  (<u>FM 34-130</u>)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)
  (FM 3-4)   (FM 34-1)   (FM 34-54)

              ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                          (Circle)

              COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                    (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has received an order to set up logistics support operations in a new battlefield area. LPT is required. The headquarters has digital and analog communication with higher and lower HQ. The mission of the command is to provide designated logistics support to organic and attached elements. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower, are available. Status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded to the commander, operations officer, and support operations officer, as appropriate. The commander has issued the XO and/or the operations officer his restated mission and planning guidance. The S2/3 Officer has staff supervision for the preparation, consolidation, and dissemination of IPB products. The higher HQ has assigned the command a general area of operations. As they are completed, higher HQ disseminates IPB products to the operations officer or appropriate staff elements. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Identified facts and assumptions related to the battlefield environment and the threat provide focus for the intelligence collection effort and enable staff planning and development of friendly COAs. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for IPB products.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. S2 or intelligence personnel determine information requirements.
   a. Identify the amount of detail required and collection feasibility within time available.
   b. Identify gaps in current intelligence using CCIR and commander's intent to set priorities.
   c. Identify initial collection requirements.
   d. Collect materials and information required to conduct IPB.
   e. Forward pertinent information to other staff sections using the appropriate communication and/or automation systems.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

2. S2 or intelligence personnel define the battlefield environment.
   a. Identify the limits of the AO.
   b. Identify the limits of the area of interest.
   c. Coordinate input on the battlefield environment with other staff elements using appropriate communication and/or automation systems.
   d. Identify significant characteristics of the battlefield environment that affect a specific area of responsibility in coordination with each staff section.
   e. Identify those characteristics of the battlefield, which require in-depth evaluation.		

3. S2 or intelligence personnel evaluate the battlefield's effects upon COA.
   a. Identify effects of terrain on CSS operations.
   b. Identify the effects of weather upon CSS operations.
   c. Identify effects of infrastructure, population demographics, economics, and political characteristics upon CSS operations.
   d. List the combined effects of the battlefield environment on friendly COAs.
   e. Identify the effects of terrain on threat COAs.
   f. Identify the effects of weather on threat COAs.
   g. Identify effects of infrastructure, population demographics, economics, and political characteristics on threat COAs.
   h. List the combined effects of the battlefield environment on threat COAs.
   i. Develop population status overlay, weather analysis matrix, and other overlays, as required.		

4. S2 or intelligence personnel evaluate the threat.
   a. Conduct a threat order-of-battle analysis for each type of conventional or unconventional units the unit might face.
   b. Develop threat COA models.		

5. S2 or intelligence personnel determine threat COA.
   a. Identify all rational courses of action available to the threat.
   b. Prioritize each available COA.
   c. Develop a comprehensive, detailed set of threat COAs.
   d. Prepare situation templates for each COA available to the threat.
   e. Prepare event template.
   f. Prepare decision support template.		

6. S2 or intelligence personnel prepare analysis of the AO. a. Consolidate IPB data into appropriate format IAW FM 101-5.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Forward draft analysis of the AO to S2/S3 Officer for review and approval.
    c. Make appropriate changes as instructed by the S2/S3 officer and the XO.
    d. Forward corrected analysis of the AO to S2/S3 officer for signature.
    e. Distribute analysis of AO, as required.
 	
7. S2 or intelligence personnel prepare the intelligence estimate.
    a. Consolidate data from templates, overlays and matrices produced.
    b. Format data IAW FM 101-5.
    c. List COAs available to threat in paragraph 4 IAW situation templates.
    d. Forward draft intelligence estimate to S2/S3 officer for review and approval.
    e. Make appropriate changes as instructed by the S2/S3 officer and the XO.
    f. Forward corrected intelligence estimate to S2/S3 officer for signature.
    g. Distribute intelligence estimate to all subordinate commands' staffs, using appropriate communication and/or automation systems.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
        S4 Section
        Support Operations Section
        Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
        Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
        S2/S3 Section
        S1 Section

TASK: Develop Feasible Courses of Action   (63-6-4003)
    (<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (FM 100-14)   (FM 101-5-1)
    (FM 3-4)

            ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                               (Circle)

            COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                      (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A new mission has been received and the commander has provided the staff with planning guidance, including possible COAs. The XO has taken the lead in directing the staff in COA development and analysis. Supported command COA considerations have been identified. The IPB process has identified probable threat COAs. Support requirements are subject to change based on OPTEMPO, developments on the battlefield, and command guidance. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Methods the commander might use to achieve his mission are identified and retained for analysis. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for developing feasible COAs.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. XO initiates and supervises COA development.
    a. Provides COAs selected or under consideration.
    b. Provides the number of COAs to develop.
    c. Provides the threat COAs to be addressed.
    d. Monitors brainstorming session to ensure compliance with
       commander's guidance.
    e. Approves feasible COA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

2. Staff sections generate conceptual possibilities.
   a. Develop possible concepts using CSSCS.
   b. Examine each concept's possibilities to determine if it satisfies COA-selection criteria.
   c. Develop feasible COA for every possible threat COA identified during the IPB.		

3. Staff officers analyze relative force ratios.
   a. Identify the relative force ratios by inspecting the unit's task organization using CSSCS.
   b. Identify threat elements capable of indirect fire against command assets (ASAS), force protection capabilities, and activities that will require units to displace.
   c. Identify human factors and integrate them into the evaluation process.
   d. Develop conclusions about friendly and threat relative capabilities and limitations.		

4. Staff officers array initial forces.
   a. Identify force requirements based on the supported command's force structure.
   b. Identify proposed support area based on initial G2 terrain analysis.
   c. Develop deception story based on commander's deception objectives.
   d. Prepare the initial array of elements based on the array of supported maneuver forces.		

5. Support Operations personnel develop the support scheme using CSSCS.
   a. Reevaluate the terrain and threat force ratio, risk, and type of operation.
   b. Develop several schemes for each potential threat COA.
   c. Identify which type of forces to allocate for the identified missions.
   d. Designate remaining support to provide backup support to previously arrayed forces.
   e. Develop supporting distribution system for each COA.		

6. Plans and Intelligence/Operations personnel determine command and control means.
   a. Identify all phases of the proposed operation.
   b. Allocate subordinate HQ over arrayed forces.
   c. Identify arrayed forces without a subordinate HQ allocated over them.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Designate sectors and zones of support responsibilities.
 	
 7. XO and Operations Officer/personnel prepare COA statements and sketches.
    a. Clarify how major subordinate units will execute the higher headquarters' mission.
    b. State the amount of risk involved.
    c. Draw a sketch that graphically portrays the COA statement.
 	
 8. Staff sections conduct COA briefing.
    a. Provide updated IPB based on most current information.
    b. Provide possible threat COA based on situation templates.
    c. Provide restated mission, and the commander's and higher commander's intent.
    d. Provide CCIR.
    e. Provide COA statement and sketch.
    f. Provide rationale for each COA.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

  SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Unit Ministry Team
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation   (63-6-4004)
     (<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (AR 530-1)   (FM 101-5-1)
     (FM 3-4)   (FM 34-60)   (FM 63-3)

                 ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                              (Circle)

                 COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                               (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The XO has directed the appropriate staff officers to prepare and update estimates of the situation for their respective areas of responsibility. The commander has provided his planning guidance. LPT is available for review. The supported command's COA has been identified. IPB data, including probable threat COA, has been consolidated into appropriate format for planning purposes. The HQ has digital and or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and level I ground threat forces attack.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Each staff officer prepares a written estimate in his own area of responsibility IAW formats in FM 101-5 or TSOP. The following estimates are maintained: personnel, CSS, civil-military, communications, operations security, deception, and psychological operations. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for maintaining current staff estimates.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Staff section leaders supervise development of estimates of the situation.
    a. Provide preparation guidance to staff member consistent with instructions provided by the XO.
    b. Provide PIR and CCIR to staff members.
    c. Monitor staff actions to ensure compliance with commander's guidance, established procedures, and TSOP.
    d. Resolve all conflicts within staff section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Approve estimate(s) of situation within staff section.
f. Brief estimate(s) of situation for area of responsibility.
 	
2. Staff sections determine specific information requirements.
   a. Identify information requirements by reviewing higher HQ mission, concept of operation, and supported commander's restated mission.
   b. Identify information holdings by reviewing section workbook, situation map, policy files, and journals.
   c. Identify information collection policies and procedures from TSOP.
   d. Identify staff section, agencies, and documents where required information can be obtained.
   e. Identify PIR and CCIR.
   f. Make preliminary analysis of the functional area of responsibility.
 	
3. Staff sections collect required information.
   a. Develop facts in own area of interest.
   b. Develop assumptions based on available information.
   c. Coordinate with other staff officers for required information using the appropriate communications system.
   d. Collect information from primary staff officers as they as they prepare their estimates.
   e. Collect information from special staff officers.
   f. Collect information from within the staff section.
   g. Identify what information collected sufficiently impacts on the analysis to affect which COA to recommend.
 	
4. Staff officers provide input to estimate(s) of the situation.
   a. Conduct an analysis of area of responsibility.
   b. Forward all required information concerning area of responsibility to designated staff section using the appropriate information system.
   c. Submit updated information as facts change the situation using the appropriate information system.
 	
5. Staff sections develop current estimates of the situation.
   a. List impact of METT-TC on specific area of responsibility and its impact on mission accomplishment.
   b. State the likely influence of METT-TC on the specific area of responsibility's support mission.
   c. Identify impact of other functional areas and their impact on mission accomplishment.
   d. State the likely influence of other functional areas on the specific area of responsibility's support mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. List advantages and disadvantages of each COA. f. State best COA. g. Recommend tactically sound "fixes" to any problems determined through the estimate process. h. Brief estimate to staff section leader. i. Disseminate estimate as prescribed by the deputy commander/XO and/or TSOP. j. Update estimate(s) as assumptions become concrete information or situation warrants.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
            S1 Section
            S2/S3 Section
            S4 Section
            Support Operations Section
            Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
            Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
            Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Analyze Feasible Courses of Action   (63-6-4005)
    (<u>FM 101-5</u>)   (FM 101-5-1)   (FM 3-4)
    (FM 3-5)   (FM 63-3)

             ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                     (Circle)

             COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                        (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The staff has developed feasible friendly COA and the XO continues to lead the staff in the COA development/analysis process. Staff sections have updated estimates of the situation. The supported commander's COA has been identified, and the IPB process has identified probable threat COA. Analysis begins with the S2/3 briefing the staff on each COA. After the staff has selected the best probable COA, the S2/S3 transcribes data into an operations estimate. Automated equipment may be available to assist in COA analysis. The TSOP indicates that if the commander selects a COA not previously considered the staff must go through COA development and analysis again. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The best COA is identified and translated into a statement of what the command will do, using the elements of "who, what, when, where, how, and why". At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for analysis of COA.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Staff officers evaluate feasible COAs using appropriate information system.
    a. Identify COAs not feasible in specific area of responsibility.
    b. Identify what non-feasible COAs can be modified to become feasible or should be eliminated.
    c. Forward immediately any information that might affect another staff officer's analysis, using appropriate information system.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Identify threat COA that should be the commander's greatest concern.		

* 2. Staff officers conduct war-gaming of feasible COA using appropriate information systems.
    a. Identify each COA's strengths and weaknesses.
    b. Record advantages and disadvantages of each COA.
    c. Identify all COA's decision points.
    d. Identify risks and major events for each COA.
    e. Identify critical information needed to support the decision points.
    f. Identify information collection and dissemination methods.
    g. Identify each COA requirements.
    h. Identify subordinate commands' task(s).
    i. Identify task organization requirements.
    j. Identify requirements for deception.		

3. Staff sections assess operational risks.
    a. Examine events by location, conditions, and potential magnitude of risk.
    b. Identify where/when controls would be appropriate for synchronizing and protecting the force.
    c. Develop controls for each COA, as required.
    d. Compare each COA's benefits with its potential risk.		

4. Staff sections compare feasible friendly COAs using appropriate information system.
    a. Compare each feasible friendly COA against each feasible threat COA.
    b. Develop decision matrixes.
    c. Score each COA in each staff section's area of expertise.
    d. Identify the best probable friendly COA against the threat's COA of most concern to the commander.		

* 5. Staff officers conduct commander's briefing.
    a. Provide all branches and sequels, which were identified during war-gaming.
    b. Present any unresolved issues or dissenting opinions.
    c. Provide answers to questions the commander may have concerning area of responsibility.
    d. Provide appropriate briefing charts and slides for area of responsibility.
    e. Announce staff's recommended COA.		

6. S2/3 Section prepares operations estimate. a. Secures data from COA analysis process.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Secures current staff estimates.
  c. Consolidates data of analysis process and current estimates.
  d. Lists staff recommendation for COA in paragraph 5, "Recommendation".
  e. Formats selected data as prescribed by FM 101-5 and TSOP.
  f. Forwards operations estimate to the commander through the deputy commander/XO.
 	
* 7. Commander/deputy commander/XO prepares supporting commander's (operations) estimate.
  a. Compares the COAs.
  b. Accepts the staff recommended COA.
  c. Modifies another COA, if required.
  d. Selects another COA, if required.
  e. Refines chosen COA into clear, concise statement of intent.
  f. Constructs a concept of operations from the wording of the selected COA.
  g. Specifies command and support considerations.
  h. Defines acceptable risk to accomplish mission.
  i. Provides scheme of support operations and supporting element requirements.
  j. Announces decision and concept of operations.
  k. Lists decision in paragraph 5, "Decision".
  l. Finalizes the supporting commander's (operations) estimate.
  m. Forwards supporting commander's (operations) estimate using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4003	Develop Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4004	Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
          S1 Section
          S2/S3 Section
          S4 Section
          Support Operations Section

TASK: Prepare Operations Plan/Order (63-6-4006)
   (<u>FM 63-2</u>)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)
   (FM 3-4)   (FM 3-5)   (FM 63-2-1)
   (FM 63-3)

              ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                     (Circle)

              COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                       (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has approved a course of action and he has provided his concept of operations. The XO has directed the S2/3 officer to complete/finalize the OPLAN/OPORD. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower, are available.   Automated equipment may be available to assist in preparation of the OPLAN/OPORD. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. The staff continuously receives messages from appropriate headquarters and subordinate units by electronic means, radio, telephone, and courier. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPLAN/OPORD reflects the commander's intention and concept of operations and states what the commander wants subordinate units/elements to do. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for OPLAN/OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S2/3 supervises staff input to OPLAN/OPORD preparation.
    a. Inspects all staff input to OPLAN/OPORD to ensure commander's intent, concept of operation, and other guidance.
    b. Enforces command estimate time plan.
    c. Coordinates interstaff activities.
 	
  2. S2/3 personnel draft "Reference", "Time Zone Used," and "Task Organizations" sections.
    a. Identify the map series, sheet number, edition, and scale according to the requirements of FM 101-5 and TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. State the time zone applicable to the operation.
c. Describe the appropriate allocation of forces to support the commander's concept or indicate the annex where this information may be found.
 	
3. Operations personnel draft paragraph 1, "Situation".
   a. List information describing the threat's most probable COA in terms of one echelon below.
   b. List assessment of terrorist activities directed against U.S. Government interests in the AO.
   c. List annex or other intelligence sources as references.
   d. State mission of supported unit, the higher commander's intent, and concept of operations.
   e. State missions of other critical commands whose actions have a significant bearing on the mission.
   f. Provide instructions for minimizing exposure to fratricide; specifically, actions that commands must take which are not inherent in existing C2 measures.
   g. List units attached to or detached from the command, together with their effective attachment or detachment times (if applicable).
   h. List assumptions that are logical, realistic, and critical to mission success.
 	
4. Operations Section personnel draft paragraph 2, "Mission."
   a. State the mission clearly and concisely (Tells WHO, does WHAT, WHERE, WHEN, and WHY).
   b. State the mission that is based on essential tasks derived during mission analysis.
 	
5. Operations and Support Operations Sections draft paragraph 3, "Execution."
   a. State the commander's intent in sufficient detail to ensure appropriate action by subordinate commands (State the How).
   b. State the commander's concept of operations for the execution of support mission from start to finish.
   c. List the scheme of support that includes placement, movement, and primary mission of each subordinate command.
   d. Describe the assignment of civil affairs elements.
   e. List coordination instructions that are applicable to two or more subordinate commands and elements.
   f. Provide time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. List CCIR, MOPP, and OEG levels, troop safety criteria, and counter fratricide measures.		

6. S1, S2, S3, S4 Sections and Support Operations Section draft paragraph 4, "Service Support."
    a. Provide general support concept statement, which identifies source of support and its location.
    b. List actions for materiel and services, medical evacuation and hospitalization, personnel, and civil-military co-operations.
    c. Identify the specific location that describes functional actions (such as annexes, TSOP, and supported command's OPORD service support annex).		

7. Operations Section personnel draft paragraph 5, "Command and Signal."
    a. State the map coordinates for the main, rear, and alternate CP locations.
    b. List signal instructions or refer to Signal Annex, if required.
    c. List acknowledgment instructions, signature block, authentication section, and distribution instructions.		

8. Operations Section personnel distribute OPLAN/OPORD.
    a. Forward draft copy to S2/3 officer and XO for approval or modification.
    b. Make all appropriate adjustments as directed by S2/3 officer and XO.
    c. Coordinate for preparation of the appropriate number of copies.
    d. Distribute OPLAN/OPORD to all appropriate staff sections, organic, and attached elements, using appropriate information system.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4000	Receive the Mission
63-6-4001	Conduct Mission Analysis
63-6-4002	Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques
63-6-4003	Develop Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4004	Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation
63-6-4005	Analyze Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4007	Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section

TASK: Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays   (63-6-4007)
(FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)   (FM 21-31)
(FM 3-4)   (FM 63-3)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has assigned missions to his subordinate commands and provided his decision and concept of operations. The S3 officer has staff responsibility for preparation of the OPLAN/OPORD and consolidation, publication, and distribution of all overlays, annexes, appendixes, tabs, enclosures, and additions. The XO has supervised staff input. Each staff section prepares appropriate annex(s) for specific area(s) of responsibility, if required. Automated equipment may be available to assist in preparation of annexes, appendixes, enclosures, tabs, additions, and overlays. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All required annexes, appendixes, enclosures, tabs, additions, and overlays are completed IAW FM 101-5, TSOP, and commander's guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for annexes, enclosures, tabs, additions, and overlays.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. S2/3 supervises staff preparation of annexes, appendixes, enclosures, tabs, and overlays. a. Reviews commander's intent and concept of operations. b. Forwards list of all required annexes and overlays to the staff, using appropriate communication system. c. Inspects all staff input to annexes, appendixes, enclosures, tabs, additions, and compliance with commander's intent, concept of operation, and other guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Selects the task organization method the staff will use in coordination with XO.
e. Approves/modifies all staff annexes, appendixes, enclosures, tabs, additions, and overlays.
f. Coordinates preparation activities between staff sections.
 	
2. S2/3 and Support Operations Section prepare task organization annex.
   a. Reviews commander's intent and concept of operations.
   b. Reviews supported command's OPLAN/OPORD to identify unit availability.
   c. Consolidates branch specific requirements for development of troop list.
   d. States the time zone applicable to the operation.
   e. Organizes subordinate commands based on capability to support mission assigned by higher headquarters commander.
   f. Coordinates MTOE/TDA changes and activation actions with higher G3 to ensure compatibility with the command troop list and TPFDL.
   g. Identifies where to reduce or add units (or elements) by reviewing the supported commander's scheme of maneuver and terrain factors.
   h. Formats task organization IAW FM 101-5 and FM 101-5-1.
   i. Forwards draft task organization annex to the XO for approval or modification.
   j. Maintains current record of each copy of annex produced.
 	
3. S2/3 Officer, in conjunction with the Support Operations Section, prepares operations overlay to OPLAN/OPORD.
   a. Reviews commander's intent and concept of operations.
   b. Identifies locations for all subordinate commands, supply points and routes, distribution points, medical facilities, and special identified areas.
   c. State map reference data, effective date, and purpose of overlay.
   d. Provide classification markings and downgrading instructions.
   e. Apply overlay plotting techniques outlined in FM 21-31.
   f. Plot boundaries, supporting, supported, and subordinate commands' locations within 50 feet of actual locations.
   g. Affix graphic portrayal of axis of advance, supply routes, supply points and distribution points.
   h. Forwards draft overlay to XO for approval or modification.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. Staff sections prepare specific annexes, appendixes, enclosures, tabs, and additions, using appropriate communications and information systems.
    a. Identify specific information for dissemination not readily incorporated into the basic plan/order.
NOTE: Annexes do not include TSOP items.
    b. Select required information for incorporation into annexes, appendixes, enclosures, tabs, and additions.
    c. Provide required information that expands the annex, if required.
    d. Provide required information that expands the appendix, if required.
    e. Provide required information necessary to amplify a tab.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4000	Receive the Mission
63-6-4001	Conduct Mission Analysis
63-6-4002	Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques
63-6-4003	Develop Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4004	Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation
63-6-4005	Analyze Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4006	Prepare Operations Plan/Order
63-6-4007	Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays
63-6-4009	Develop Road Movement Order
63-6-4010	Develop Occupation Plan

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4011	Plan Area Tactical Operations
63-6-4012	Provide Assistance for Supported Command's Logistics Planning
63-6-4013	Plan Base Cluster Operations
63-6-4014	Supervise Advance/Quartering Party Activities
63-6-4015	Establish Command Post (Forward)
63-6-4016	Establish Communications
63-6-4017	Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements
63-6-4018	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Headquarters
63-6-4019	Establish the Logistics Operations Center and Administrative Areas
63-6-4020	Operate the Logistics Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center
63-6-4021	Supervise Support Operations Subelement Functions
63-6-4022	Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP)
63-6-4029	Coordinate Combat Health Support
63-6-4030	Coordinate Transportation Support
63-6-4031	Coordinate Field Services Support
63-6-4032	Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination
63-6-4033	Perform Assessment and Recovery Operations
63-6-4034	Coordinate Support for Regeneration Activities
63-6-4035	Operate the Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center
63-6-4036	Supervise Operations Security Program
63-6-4037	Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
63-6-4038	Maintain Communications
63-6-4039	Provide Human Resources Support - Personnel Services
63-6-4040	Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services
63-6-4041	Conduct Command Religious Support Program
63-6-4042	Provide Command and Control
63-6-4043	Provide Automation Support
63-6-4046	Manage Replacement of Weapons Systems
63-6-4047	Operate Rear Tactical Operations Center
63-6-4048	Provide Intelligence Support
63-6-4049	Direct Response to Threat Actions
63-6-4050	Direct Area Damage Control Operations
63-6-4303	Combat Battlefield Stress
63-6-4326	Perform Risk Management Procedures
63-6-4850	Direct Deployment Alert Activities
63-6-4851	Establish the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)
63-6-4852	Operate the Emergency Operations Center (EOC)
63-6-4853	Supervise Deployment/Redeployment Activities
63-6-4854	Update Movement Plan/Order
63-6-4855	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4856	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support
63-6-4857	Coordinate Family Assistance Support
63-6-4858	Coordinate Deployment Training Support
63-6-4859	Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions
63-6-4860	Provide Deployment Logistics Support
63-6-4861	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities
63-6-4862	Coordinate Onward Movement
63-6-4863	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support
63-6-4864	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities
63-6-4865	Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment
63-6-4866	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order
63-6-4867	Provide Redeployment Support
63-6-4868	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities
63-6-4869	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities
63-6-4870	Coordinate Home Station Activities
63-6-4871	Direct Integration Activities
63-6-4872	Plan Command Deployment in a Peacetime Environment
63-6-4873	Plan Command Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order
63-6-4874	Plan Command Redeployment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Transportation Branch
S4 Section
Command Section
S2/S3 Section
Support Operations Section

TASK: Develop Road Movement Order   (63-6-4009)
   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)   (FM 3-4)
   (FM 55-30)   (FM 63-3)

               ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                    (Circle)

               COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                         (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A new area of operations has been identified. Future locations of subordinate/supporting units have been designated and coordinated with the higher HQ staff element. The HQ is responsible for positioning all its subordinate commands. The HQ has digital and/or analog communications with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays, Unit TSOP, higher TSOP, and lower TSOP are available. The S2/3 has staff responsibility for the movement order in coordination with the Support Operations and S4 Section. The OPLAN/OPORD is available. During the move the staff continues to direct logistics activities in support of the current operation. SCPE is on hand, or field-expedient and natural shelters are available, whichever applies. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Movement order is prepared IAW FM 101-5 and the TSOP within the time established in the preparation guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for movement order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Plans/Intelligence Branch lists requirements and external coordination necessary for HQ company and other assigned or attached to HQ to conduct a road movement.
  a. Identifies the current vehicle availability rate of HQ company and other elements assigned or attached to HQ.
  b. Identifies the number of vehicles required to relocate the HQ company and other elements assigned or attached to HQ.
  c. Calculates the number of lifts required relocating the HQ company and other elements assigned or attached to HQ.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Identifies all adjacent command boundaries and areas of responsibility to be crossed by subordinate commands and elements.
    e. Identifies the probable security requirements by reviewing intelligence estimates and summaries.
    f. Briefs S2/3 Officer, as required.
 	
2. Plans/Intelligence Branch selects tentative march route(s) for HQ company and elements assigned or attached to HQ, using appropriate communications and information systems.
    a. Identifies all possible routes by conducting map reconnaissance.
    b. Identifies current tactical implications for all possible routes in close coordination with the RCPOC.
    c. Identifies possible problem areas and road traffic ability from engineer road classification overlays and intelligence summaries.
    d. Conducts comparative analysis of all possible routes.
    e. Selects best possible route(s).
    f. Coordinates route selection with and other staff sections.
    g. Forwards route(s) selection to the S2/3 Officer for approval or modification.
 	
3. S2/3 Officer directs route reconnaissance activities.
    a. Tasks HQ company and other elements assigned or attached to HQ to conduct reconnaissance of tentative march routes.
    b. Briefs/directs the conduct of reconnaissance parties' leader briefing(s).
    c. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate communications and information systems.
    d. Monitors movement and activities of all reconnaissance parties to ensure compliance with instructions and TSOP.
    e. Debriefs or directs the conduct of debriefings of elements' reconnaissance leaders upon completion of mission.
 	
4. Plans/Intelligence Branch selects specific march route(s).
    a. Consolidates all route reconnaissance party(s) data.
    b. Conducts comparative analysis of all data for each tentative route.
    c. Selects primary and secondary route(s) for each subordinate element.
    d. Coordinates routes with commanders and leaders of all elements.
    e. Prepares overlays using subordinate unit reconnaissance data.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Briefs the S2/3 Officer for approval or modification instructions, as required.		
g. Provides reconnaissance and route selection update to the commander.		
h. Forwards all reconnaissance data to supported command HQ, Support Operations Section, RCPOC and adjacent and subordinate units, using appropriate communications and information systems.		
5. S4 Section coordinates internal support requirements for move.		
a. Coordinates supply support with subordinate and attached units using the appropriate communications and information systems.		
b. Coordinates maintenance support with subordinate and attached units using the appropriate communications and information systems.		
c. Coordinates transportation support with subordinate and attached units using the appropriate communications and information systems.		
d. Coordinates food service support with subordinate and attached units using the appropriate communications and information systems.		
6. Support Operations Office and Movement Control Office coordinate external movement support requirements.		
a. Coordinate additional external transportation requirements with the transportation management support element using the appropriate communications and information systems or DAMMS-R.		
b. Coordinates route clearances in the Division with the DTO and at Corps with appropriate coordinating transportation office and the supporting RCPOC using the appropriate communications and information systems or DAMMS-R.		
c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation requirements and procedures with supporting units using the appropriate communications and information systems.		
d. Coordinates security escort, fire support, and CAS requirements with supporting RCPOC using the appropriate communications and information systems.		
e. Coordinates MP traffic control support with supporting MP element and supporting RCPOC using the appropriate communications and information systems.		
f. Coordinates decontamination and smoke requirements with the chemical officer through the RCPOC using the appropriate communications and information systems.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

7. Plans/Intelligence Branch develops movement schemes for HQ company and other elements assigned or attached to command.
    a. Coordinates with elements' commanders for the task organization and order of march.
    b. Debriefs elements' reconnaissance personnel.
    c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays, using appropriate communications and information systems and DAMMS-R.
    d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with the elements' commanders.
    e. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate communications and information systems.
 	
8. S2/3 and S4 Sections develop support-during-movement plan.
    a. Calculates projected logistics and CHS requirements until new operational sites are established by evaluating current supported units' assets.
    b. Coordinates anticipated requirements with supported units in current AO using the appropriate communications and information systems.
    c. Provides recommendations for order of movement for elements and specific shuttling of high priority logistics and possible CHS assets.
    d. Establishes notification procedures to alert customers of "when" and "what" facilities are available during movement.
 	
9. Plans/Intelligence Branch develops overall movement scheme for move.
    a. Identifies the task organization for movement with critical supplies and equipment dispersed throughout all elements.
    b. Assigns order of march for move by placing elements with the highest critical items in the first serial.
    c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays for the move, using appropriate communications and information systems.
NOTE: Under MOPP4 conditions, road movement tables should be increased a minimum of 3 times the normal movement time.
    d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with all subordinate elements' commanders, using appropriate communications and information systems.
 	
10. Plans/Intelligence Branch drafts "Reference"," Time Zone Used", and "Task Organization" sections of the movement order.
    a. Lists all maps and overlays, charts, or other documents required to understand the order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Transcribes time zone used throughout from the OPLAN. c. Identifies task organization as directed by S2/3.		

11. Plans/Intelligence Branch drafts paragraph 1, Situation.
    a. Provides weather forecast for duration of move and its effect on route(s).
    b. Provides terrain analysis and its effects on the move.
    c. Lists enemy disposition, strength, and capability factors affecting movement.
    d. Lists all friendly units that provide support during the move.
    e. Lists attachments and detachments initiated for movement purposes only.		

12. Plans/Intelligence Branch drafts paragraph 2, Mission.
    a. States those tasks to be accomplished, addressing who, what, when, why, and where.
    b. Provides overall movement mission statement that includes the purpose of movement and the start times.		

13. Plans/Intelligence Branch drafts paragraph 3, Execution.
    a. Provides brief statement on the concept of the move.
    b. Lists all subordinate elements' taskings required to complete the move.
    c. Lists all coordinating instructions applicable to two or more subordinate elements and the HQ.		

14. S4 Section drafts paragraph 4, Service Support.
    a. Lists all units and the service support they provide to at least two subordinate elements and the HQ.
    b. Lists all traffic control support that affects at least two subordinate units and HQ.
    c. Lists the element's service support functions.		

15. Plans/Intelligence Branch drafts paragraph 5, Command and Signal and the Authentication Section.
    a. Lists position of command group in the sub-elements move and the location of HQ during the move.
    b. Lists CP closing and opening times and new location.
    c. Lists all communications information.
NOTE: List includes effective SOI, instructions on the use of radio and pyrotechnics, and any restrictions or special communications procedures.
    d. Lists acknowledgement instructions appropriate signature block, and distribution instructions.		

16. Plans/Intelligence Branch distributes movement order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Forwards draft movement order to the S2/3 for approval or modifications. b. Coordinates movement order review with other staff sections. c. Distributes approved movement order to appropriate staff sections, subordinate, and attached units, using appropriate communications and information systems.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
10-6-0200	Develop Petroleum and Water Operations Estimates
10-6-0201	Plan Bulk Petroleum and Water Support Operations
10-6-0202	Coordinate Petroleum and Water Support Operations
10-6-0203	Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs
10-6-4570	Conduct Quality Surveillance and Safety Programs
63-6-4032	Provide Foreign Nation Support Coordination
63-6-4045	Manage Supply Operations
63-6-4872	Plan Command Deployment in a Peacetime Environment

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section
Support Operations Section

TASK: Develop Occupation Plan   (63-6-4010)
(FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)   (FM 3-4)
(FM 5-103)   (FM 63-3)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                          (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                      (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The XO has assigned responsibilities for planning the occupation of a new area to the staff sections and the S2/3 has the lead in plan development. Subordinate units' missions have been identified and tentative operational and HQ locations have been designated. The Corps and division G3 has provided general reconnaissance information for planning purposes. Portions of the new area may be in or around cities or towns. The HQ has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays and other required documents have been forwarded to commanders and appropriate staff elements. Unit, higher, and subordinate TSOPs are available to the staff for use in the planning process. SCPE is on hand, or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Occupation plan is prepared IAW TSOP and is in compliance with commander's guidance. The areas selected support subordinate units and HQ personnel, equipment, and mission requirements. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase occupation plan completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Plans/Intelligence Branch verifies the suitability of the new area by map reconnaissance.
   a. Calculates space requirements for number and type of elements and base facilities proposed in the new area.
   b. Identifies space availability to support number and type of elements, and base facilities proposed in the new area.
   c. Verifies the suitability of the area to support equipment and vehicles.
   d. Identifies accessibility of roads and size of areas around buildings (urban environment).		

ARTEP 10-602-MTP

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Determines the availability of area cover and concealment.
f. Verifies that the area is suitability for establishing helicopter landing sites.
 	
2. Staff Sections provide a support analysis of tentative operational areas, using appropriate communications and information systems.
  a. Identify specific functional area advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas by reviewing Corps and Division Analyses of the AO.
  b. Provide a communications support analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.
  c. Provide a distribution analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.
  d. Provide an NBC defense analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.
  e. Provide ADP analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.
  f. Provide OPSEC analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed area.
  g. Provide a logistics analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.
  h. Forward analysis reports to S2/3 Section.
 	
3. S2/3 Section selects final sites for subordinate elements and HQ.
  a. Identifies specific missions for each subordinate element and HQ.
  b. Identifies proposed locations of all subordinate elements and HQ.
  c. Posts proposed HQ and subordinate elements' positions on the situation map(s).
  d. Coordinates proposed site selections with subordinate elements and staff, using appropriate communications and information systems.
  e. Briefs proposed sites and rationale to the commander or XO for approval or modifications.
  f. Forwards approved site selections to Corps and/or Division HQ, staff, RCPOC and subordinate elements, using appropriate communications and information systems.
  g. Prepares map overlays with all appropriate boundaries, supply routes, and subordinate elements locations using symbols IAW FM 101-5-1, using appropriate communications and information systems.
 	
4. S2/3 Section formulates a tentative CP area layout plan.
  a. Selects a general location for the CP.		

5 - 228

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Designates location of subordinate elements. c. Prepares a traffic circulation plan, which depicts the traffic pattern for key roads in the general and CP area. d. Prepares communication plan, which shows wire diagrams that connect all subordinate elements and includes instructions for runners system until wire communications are operational. e. Prepares a hasty security plan, which provides minimum requirements for all subordinate elements. f. Disseminates layout plan to all subordinate elements and the advance/quartering party leader, using appropriate communications and information systems.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
63-6-4000	Receive the Mission
63-6-4001	Conduct Mission Analysis
63-6-4002	Apply Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Doctrine and Techniques
63-6-4003	Develop Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4004	Maintain Current Estimates of the Situation
63-6-4005	Analyze Feasible Courses of Action
63-6-4006	Prepare Operations Plan/Order
63-6-4007	Prepare Annexes, Appendixes, Enclosures, Tabs, and Overlays
63-6-4009	Develop Road Movement Order
63-6-4010	Develop Occupation Plan

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Establish Communications   (63-6-4016)
      (<u>FM 24-33</u>)   (FM 24-18)   (FM 24-22)
      (FM 24-35)   (FM 24-35-1)   (FM 34-80)
      (FM 63-3)

                        ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                                            (Circle)

                        COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                                  (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The advance/quartering party has secured the new area of operations IAW movement order and TSOP. Communications personnel accompanied the advance party to establish the command's communications system at the new location. The supporting signal element is responsible for running wire to the CP from higher HQ. Locations for activities, in the support area, such as the CP (Forward), have been designated. Equipment and personnel necessary for establishing communications are available. Initial communications were established by the communications elements that accompanied the advance party. Unit TSOPs, including higher and lower, are available. The TSOP or communications plan requires the establishment of a 24-hour message service to supplement/serve as backup for communications systems. LPT is available for review. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Wire, radio, and digital communications and generator power are established IAW the communications plan, OPORD, SOI/SSI and TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increases time required to establish communications. NOTE: For staffs without a S6 Section, this task will be performed by the S2/3 Section, Communications Branch.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. S6 Section/Communication Branch Chief organizes communications element of the advance/quartering party.
    a. Selects branch personnel to perform all communication setup tasks at new location.
    b. Selects required vehicles and equipment to establish communications at the new site IAW movement order or TSOP.
    c. Coordinates area communications system support at the new location with supporting signal element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Inspects personnel, vehicles, and equipment before departure for compliance with TSOP and commander's guidance. e. Dispatches communications element to assembly area for departure. f. Ensures radio communications exist during a move between the start point and release point.		
2. S6 Section/Communication Branch provides assistance for area communications system hookup. a. Identifies locations of the switchboard in coordination with HQ advance/quartering party leader. b. Identifies all other elements that require area communication system hookup.		
3. S6 Section/Communication Branch installs local and area networks. a. Determines digital communications service requirements. b. Ensures digital communications links with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units. c. Plans backup means of communications. d. Implements backup means of communications.		
4. S6 Section/Communication Branch performs system/software security manager functions. a. Issues passwords. b. Installs antivirus software. c. Performs CSSCS network management functions in support of Support Operations Section. d. Coordinates with the CSSAMO to resolve application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS. e. Advises the commander, staff and subordinate units on communications matters. f. Coordinates with Support Operations Section to ensure COOP is included in communications estimate/plan.		
5. S6 Section/Communication Branch establishes wire communications. a. Identifies locations of all subordinate elements' CPs. b. Plans wire and telephone installation. c. Prepares a telephone traffic diagram. d. Installs telephone switchboard. e. Installs telephones. f. Lays wire for communications between switchboard and other subordinate elements. g. Establishes wire communications between LOC and switchboard.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

h. Establishes other wire communications between switchboard and other subordinate elements when area signal support personnel arrive.
i. Tests each telephone circuit to ensure there are no breaks in the wire system.
 	
6. S6 Section/Communication Branch Chief selects radio communication site.
  a. Selects best location for primary communication site based on tactical and technical requirements in coordination with the advance/quartering party leader.
  b. Identifies support requirements for communication sites, such as fuel, water, maintenance, and rations.
  c. Selects alternate site(s).
  d. Selects locations away from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.
  e. Establishes physical security control of COMSEC material and documents containing EEFI.
  f. Incorporates signal site defense plan with overall defense plan, using appropriate BFACS.
 	
7. S6 Section/Communication Branch establishes generator power.
  a. Selects sites.
  b. Establishes fire and fuel storage points.
  c. Levels generator sets.
  d. Conducts preoperational PMCS.
  e. Grounds generator sets.
  f. Connects DC power cable.
  g. Performs starting procedures.
  h. Accomplishes transition to generator power with minimum interruption of communications.
  i. Constructs sound barriers and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signal.
  j. Operates generator sets IAW appropriate TM.
 	
8. S6 Section/Communication Branch establishes a message center.
  a. Establishes primary and alternate messenger routes and schedules.
  b. Coordinates pickup and delivery times with users.
  c. Identifies type of messengers to be used.
  d. Establishes message control and accountability procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number   **Task Title**
63-6-4038   Maintain Communications

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Unit Ministry Team
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Maintain Communications   (63-6-4038)
(FM 24-33)   (AR 380-19)   (AR 380-19-1)
(AR 380-40)   (FM 24-18)   (FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)   (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations have commenced and elements within the LOC have communications with the headquarters staff and supporting units, and supported units. The unit and higher-level HQ OPORD, with all annexes, status reports, maps, and overlays have been forwarded to the commander and responsible staff elements. The unit higher and lower TSOPs and SOI/SSI are available. Coordination of support operations is coordinated by radio, digital devices, telephone, and/or messenger. The threat is capable of locating, identifying, and rapidly exploiting all types of communications. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Uninterrupted, 24-hour communications is provided to headquarters and all supported units through one or more external means. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to maintain the communications system.

NOTE: If there is not a S6 Section, the S2/3 Section, Communications Branch will perform task steps assigned to S6. At MOPP4, only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S6 Officer exercises staff supervision over analog and digital communications services. a. Advises the commander and staff on all communications matters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Maintains local area networks.
    c. Issues passwords.
    d. Installs anti-virus.
    e. Coordinates manipulative communications deception plans with the S2/3.
    f. Coordinates tactical ECCM with the S2/3.
    g. Coordinates CSSCS network management with support operations personnel.
    h. Troubleshoots communications equipment or system problems with unit's users.
    i. Ensures analog and digital communications with higher, adjacent and subordinate units.
 	
2. S6 Section operates the HQ NCS.
    a. Opens net IAW current SOI/SSI.
    b. Challenges all stations in net as required in the SOI/SSI.
    c. Controls entry and departure of all stations.
    d. Corrects all errors in net operating procedures.
    e. Enforces station and net restrictions.
    f. Observes radio and listening silence periods as prescribed by OPORD or commander's directives.
    g. Completes transition to extended range of radio station within 15 minutes, if required.
    h. Remotes radio station(s) at least one kilometer, if required.
    i. Close net IAW SOI/SSI.
 	
3. Radio operators transmit and receive messages over the radio net.
    a. Process messages by precedence and date and time group IAW the TSOP.
    b. Process incoming messages without errors.
    c. Forward incoming messages to appropriate element or section.
    d. Check outgoing messages for completeness and readability.
    e. Employ approved radio-telephone procedures.
    f. Transmit message IAW precedence, correct format, and prescribed text.
    g. Employ approved codes and brevity lists when transmitting the names of persons, places, and sensitive information.
    h. Decrypt all incoming messages.
    i. Encrypt all outgoing messages.
    j. Transmit messages for no longer than 20 seconds.
    k. Employ lowest operational power setting consistent with operational requirements.
 	
4. S6 Section maintains land line communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Maintains wire communications between CP and all subordinate units.		
b. Maintains a hot loop between the command's CP and all subordinate elements, if switchboard is not available.		
c. Establishes messenger runner when land communications are inoperative.		
5. Radio operators implement remedial ECCM.		
a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by disconnecting the radio antenna.		
b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming.		
c. Switch to high power on receiver-transmitters.		
d. Recommend distant stations switch to high power.		
e. Relocate radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.		
f. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.		
g. Submit initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to higher HQ communications section.		
h. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications, such as relay (through another station), or wire.		
i. Request (using alternate means) that the net change to a backup frequency.		
6. Radio operators implement AM remedial ECCM.		
a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by disconnecting the radio antenna.		
b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming.		
c. Check for intentional or unintentional interference.		
d. Check equipment grounding.		
e. Use radio frequency gain/frequency vernier in an attempt to work through the jamming.		
f. Relocate the radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce effects of jamming.		
g. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.		
h. Submit MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to the area support Communications Branch and/or supporting signal element.		
i. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications, such as relay (through another radio station), FM, RWI, or wire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Request using alternate means that the net change to alternate frequency.		

7. S6 Section maintains generator power.
    a. Operate generators IAW appropriate TM.
    b. Construct sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signature.
    c. Construct fuel storage and fire control point for all generators as prescribed by TSOP and commander's guidance.		

8. S6 Section employs SIGSEC measures.
    a. Employs COMSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to deny friendly telecommunications information to the threat.
    b. Employs ELSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to protect electromagnetic transmissions, other than communications devices, from threat detection.
    c. Evaluates TEMPEST controls to identify emanations vulnerabilities and countermeasures.
    d. Processes initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports from subordinate units.
    e. Forwards MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports to the S2/3 Section IAW TSOP and SOI/SSI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
          Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
          Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Provide Command and Control   (63-6-4042)
     (<u>FM 3-0</u>)   (FM 100-10)   (FM 101-5)
     (FM 25-4)   (FM 3-4)   (FM 7-0)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                        (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                                              (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command has been notified of a pending deployment or has already deployed to an OCONUS site. The Emergency Operations Center is functional and/or if the command has already deployed, the CP area has been established and tactical and support operations are ongoing. The headquarters has digital and/or analog communication with higher and lower HQ. Status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents have been forwarded to the Commander and key staff leaders. The unit higher and lower TSOPs. If the command is in a field environment, SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command Section commands and controls all subordinate unit activities IAW plans, established policies and directives, and the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of decision-making procedures and activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Command Section supervises activities of subordinate units.
    a. Monitors performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of efficiency, as prescribed in plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP, is maintained.
    b. Monitors support plans to determine overall effectiveness.
    c. Assigns specific tasks to subordinate units.
    d. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate units' compliance.
    e. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the OPORD and annexes.
 	
* 2. XO supervises staff activity.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.
   b. Formulates staff operating policies.
   c. Supervises maintenance of master policy files.
   d. Monitors all staff actions for compliance with commander's guidance.
   e. Coordinates assigned mission with subordinate units' commanders using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   f. Supervises the operations of the LOC.
 	
3. Command Section exchanges information.
   a. Transforms pertinent information into usable data for decision making.
   b. Coordinates information exchange within, and with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.
   c. Conducts operational briefings as necessary.
 	
4. Command Section provides staff liaison.
   a. Provides planning assistance to any supported unit, if requested.
   b. Provides assistance in planning contingency operations, when required.
 	
5. Command Section maintains policy files.
   a. Maintains current policy files by tabbing and indexing.
   b. Maintains current staff journals.
   c. Maintains current section's workbook files.
   d. Maintains current section's situation maps and overlays.
 	
6. Command Section reacts to loss of key personnel.
   a. Realigns staff based on line of succession or commander's guidance.
   b. Maintains continuity of operations.
   c. Forwards casualty reports to personnel channels using the appropriate BFACS, radio, or wire.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Plans, Requirements & Distribution Branch
Water Plans/Requirements/Distribution Branch
Transportation Branch
Facilities Branch
Petroleum Liaison Section
Quality Surveillance/Safety Branch
Base Petroleum Laboratory
Unit Ministry Team
Quartermaster Petroleum Base Laboratory
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Combat Battlefield Stress   (63-6-4303)
(FM 22-51)   (FM 100-14)   (FM 3-4)
(FM 6-22.5)

              ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M
                                          (Circle)

              COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                              (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations are ongoing and continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for units/elements/staff personnel. The HQ has digital and analog communications with higher and lower HQ. Unit higher and lower TSOPs are available.   This task is performed under all day or night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command key leaders and staff supervisors apply techniques to counter degradation of morale, training, and physical condition of personnel in performance of the CSS/CHS support mission. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase implementation time of stress prevention measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions.
    a. Issue warning orders, OPORD, and FRAGO to the lowest possible level.
    b. Provide entire staff an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Brief commander's intentions to all staff personnel.
d. Speak positively concerning the missions, purpose, and abilities.
e. Encourage a positive attitude throughout the staff.
f. Employ an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.
g. Inform personnel of availability of religious support.
 	
* 2. Commander and leaders implement sleep plan.
    a. Coordinate with HQ Company for a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.
    b. Develop sleep plan IAW FM 22-51.
    c. Adjust sleep plan as dictated by tactical situation.
 	
* 3. Staff element leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.
    a. Cross-train staff personnel on all critical tasks.
    b. Develop a plan for rotation of staff personnel between demanding and non-demanding tasks.
    c. Assign two staff members to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.
    d. Adjust task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.
 	
* 4. Staff element leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques.
    a. Integrate new members into the staff elements immediately.
    b. Implement a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among staff members and leaders.
    c. Provide instructions on relaxation techniques to all staff personnel.
    d. Conduct routine after-action stress briefings.
 	
* 5. Commander and leaders implement treatment techniques.
    a. Develop plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.
    b. Assign staff members showing signs of stress or BF to simple tasks.
    c. Direct staff members to be supportive of BF or stressed personnel.
    d. Direct movement of staff members showing no signs of improvement to supporting medical facilities.
    e. Refer for medical evaluation those staff members showing signs of serious stress or battle fatigue.
    f. Reintegrate RTD staff members into their specific element or section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

6. Staff personnel employ preventive stress measures.
    a. Maintain a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.
    b. Comply with the commander's sleep plan.
    c. Identify signs of stress or BF in other staff members.
    d. Provide immediate buddy aid support.
    e. Report signs of stress or BF of other staff members to immediate supervisor.
    f. Accept new unit members immediately.
    g. Practice relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.
    h. Participate in buddy system and after-action stress briefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Support Operations Section
Unit Ministry Team
Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team

TASK: Plan Command Deployment upon Receipt of a Warning Order   (63-6-4873)
(<u>FM 55-65</u>)   (AR 220-10)   (DOD 4500.32-R VOL 1)
(DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2)   (DOD DIR 4500.9)   (FM 100-17)
(FM 100-17-3)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command receives deployment WARNO. The command is at a normal state of deployment readiness and receives a WARNO to go to an increased deploy ability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The SDO or SDNCO has notified the commander. This task occurs concurrently with directing deployment alert activities. The unit MOBPLAN (RC), movement plan, recalls plan, RSOP, TSOP security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. The subordinate units are deploying as part of the command deployment. The command communicates with subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. Deployment planning activities are performed under all day or night environmental conditions, except NBC. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: MOBPLAN (RC) and movement plans are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

NOTE: MOBPLANs are required only for RC units. RC-specific tasks steps and performance measures are annotated "(RC)".

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. DISCOM Commander directs deployment planning.
    a. Identifies deployment mission requirements by reviewing the WARNO and appropriate CONPLAN.
    b. Briefs staff on deployment mission.
    c. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.
    d. Directs verification of deployment mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Directs OPLANs update.
f. Directs MOBPLAN (RC) review.
g. Directs subordinate units movement plans validation.
h. Directs security plan implementation.
i. Verifies readiness status.
 	
* 2. Executive Officer coordinates staff planning.
  a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.
  b. Assigns staff responsibilities for preparing movement/deployment plans.
  c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.
  d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.
  e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.
  f. Prepares commander's briefing.
  g. Identifies redeployment criteria.
 	
3. S2/S3 Section analyzes mission.
  a. Identifies all specified and implied tasks in the WARNO.
  b. Identifies all documented policies and procedures.
  c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ.
  d. Coordinates with S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission.
  e. Coordinates with S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of mission.
  f. Verifies maps and overlays for current mission.
  g. Coordinates with Security Officer to incorporate risk management procedures into the OPLANs.
  h. Incorporates force protection measures into OPLANs.
  i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission.
 	
4. Staff Officers conduct readiness review of subordinate units.
  a. Performs personnel readiness review.
  b. Performs logistics readiness review.
  c. Performs OPSEC readiness review.
  d. Identifies readiness issues.
  e. Provides recommendations to improve readiness.
  f. Coordinates with supporting active duty readiness organization for support (RC).
 	
5. S2/S3 Section validates MOBPLAN (RC).
  a. Updates MOBPLAN with current mission information.
  b. Confirms annex information is correct.
  c. Coordinates with S4 for review of logistics portions of plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

6. S4 Section validates movement plan.
    a. Validates movement plans for all modes of transportation indicated in the WARNO.
    b. Validates equipment status against MCSR.
    c. Validates AUEL of subordinate units against unit property books.
    d. Coordinates for S2/S3 review of subordinate unit and higher HQ movement plans.
    e. Verifies logistics annexes of MOBPLAN (RC).
 	
* 7. Staff officers supervise staff actions.
    a. Identify tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy by reviewing the movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANs and commander's guidance.
    b. Exchange pertinent information relevant to the deployment with the other staff sections.
    c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/S3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's brief, as required.
    d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Quartermaster Petroleum Liaison Team
  Command Section
  S1 Section
  S2/S3 Section
  S4 Section
  Support Operations Section
  Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Plan Command Redeployment   (63-6-4874)
  (FM 100-17)   (AR 220-10)   (DOD 4500.32-R VOL 1)
  (DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2)   (FM 55-65)

                    ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5
                                       (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U
                                       (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The command receives a WARNO to deploy to home station. The command and subordinate units are located in the TAA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The command staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate higher HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means and courier. The readiness RSOP and deployment WARNO are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Redeployment Movement Plan is completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Commander directs redeployment planning.
    a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.
    b. Directs S2/S3 to prepare OPORD.
    c. Directs S2/S3 to validate subordinate units' Movement Plans.
    d. Directs Security Officer to update Security Plan.
    e. Directs S1 to verify SRP activities.
 	
* 2. Staff officers analyze mission.
    a. Identify tasks in the WARNO.
    b. Identify documented policies and procedures.
    c. Coordinate mission parameters and details with higher HQ.
    d. Coordinate with the S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission.		

ARTEP 10-602-MTP

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Coordinate with the S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of mission.
    f. Prepare command OPORD.
    g. Verify redeployment maps and overlays.
    h. Brief commander on redeployment mission.
 	
* 3. Executive Officer coordinates staff planning.
    a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.
    b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating redeployment plans.
    c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.
    d. Coordinates redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.
    e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.
 	
4. Staff Sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units.
    a. Performs personnel readiness review.
    b. Perform logistics readiness review.
    c. Perform OPSEC readiness review.
    d. Identify readiness issues.
    e. Make recommendations to bring unit to designated readiness level.
 	
5. S4 Section validates deployment plans.
    a. Validates equipment status.
    b. Validates AUEL for subordinate units.
    c. Coordinates for S2/S3 review of subordinate units and battalion redeployment movement plans.
 	
* 6. Staff Officers supervise staff sections.
    a. Direct preparation of redeployment plans and orders.
    b. Direct preparation of draft input for commander's brief.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

Chapter 6

External Evaluation

6-1. INTRODUCTION. An external evaluation is conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime mission. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external evaluation. The unit may modify the evaluation, based on METT-TC and other considerations, as deemed appropriate by the commander. The unit will be evaluated using the standards from selected T&EOs found in Chapter 5 of this MTP. This evaluation will encompass the whole unit and should employ a realistic OPFOR and the use of MILES. At the completion of the evaluation, the unit commander should be able to identify the strengths and weaknesses of the unit. These strengths and weaknesses will form the basis for future training and resource allocation.

6-2.   PREPARING THE EVALUATION. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit's capabilities.

a.   Preparing the Evaluation Instrument. Prepare the evaluation by developing a scenario containing the major missions and appropriate tasks. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations. Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in-process AARs. The sample evaluation scenario in Table 6-1 contains missions, as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Selective tailoring is required, because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation.

(1)   Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element, using Table 6-1. Record the selected missions in the Unit Proficiency Worksheet (UPW), Figure 6-1.

(2)   List each mission on a Task Summary Sheet, Figure 6-2.

(3)   Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the Task Summary Sheets, which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4)   Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations, Table 6-1, Sample Evaluation Scenario. Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in-process AARs.

No.	Unit Mission /Task	_____ Section /Squad	_____ Section /Squad	_____ Section /Squad	_____ Section /Squad	Unit Overall and Remarks
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	

Unit _____ Date_____

* If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form

Figure 6-1. Example Unit Proficiency Worksheet

TASK SUMMARY SHEET			
MISSION:			
TASK TITLES	**T&EO NUMBERS**	**EVALUATION**	
		GO	**NO GO**

Observer Controller's Signature: _____

NOTE: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. Observer Controller comments may be placed on an enclosure to each task summary sheet.

Figure 6-2. Example Task Summary Sheet

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME		TIME FRAME	
	Table 6-1. Headquarters, Petroleum Group Evaluation Scenario				
1.	Admin preparation	As required		Prior to start	
	Part 1				
2.	Deployment alert notification		10 min	**Day 1**	0500
3.	Initiate recall plan		30 min		0530
4.	Establish the emergency operations center	2 hrs			0730
5.	*Operate the emergency operations center	10 hrs			
6.	*Supervise CSG deployment activities	3 hrs			
7.	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program processing support	3 hrs			1010
8.	Provide deployment personnel and administrative support	4 hrs			1410
9.	Coordinate family assistance plan	2 hrs			1610
10.	Coordinate deployment training support	2 hrs			1810
11.	Perform deployment intelligence support functions	2 hrs			2010
12.	*Provide deployment logistics support	8 hrs			
13.	Update movement plan/order		50 min		2100
14.	Coordinate rear detachment support	2 hrs			2300
15.	*Perform home station rear detachment activities	2 hrs			
16	AAR	1 hr			2400
	Part 2				
17.	Coordinate relocation of subordinate elements	3 hrs		**Day 2**	0600
18.	Supervise relocation of subordinate elements	4 hrs			1000
19.	AAR	1 hr			1100

	Table 6-1. Headquarters, Petroleum Group Evaluation Scenario (continued)			
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME**	**TIME FRAME**	
20.	Monitor advance/quartering party activities	4 hrs		1500
21.	Establish CSG command post (forward)	2 hrs		1700
22.	Coordinate onward movement	1 hr		1800
23.	Supervise road march	1 hr		1900
24.	Threat interdictions		40 min	1940
25.	Cross release points		10 min	1950
26	Supervise establishment of subordinate elements and CSG HQ	3 hrs		2250
27.	AAR	1 hr		2350

Part 3

28.	Conduct mission analysis	1 hr	**Day 3**	0500
29.	Develop staff estimates	1 hr		0600
30.	Prepare operations order/plan and annexes	2 hrs		0800
31.	AAR	1 hrs		0900
32.	* Provide Corps-Level Logistics Support	10 hrs		
33.	Threat interdictions		40 min	0940
34.	AAR	1 hr		1040
35.	Level II/III attacks		30 min	1110
36.	Defense responses		30 min	1140
37.	Damage assessment	2 hrs		1340
38.	Restoration of support	2 hrs		1540
39.	AAR	1 hr		1640

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	TIME FRAME
	Table 6-1. Headquarters, Petroleum Group Evaluation Scenario (continued)		
	Part 4		
40.	Receive warning order for redeployment	10 min	**DAY 4** 0400
41.	Coordinate reconstitution for deployment	2 hrs	0600
42.	Prepare redeployment movement plan/order	1 hr	0700
43.	Supervise CSG redeployment activities	2 hrs	0900
44.	Provide redeployment support	2 hrs	1100
45.	Perform redeployment advance party activities	2 hrs	1300
46.	Perform theater rear detachment activities	2 hrs	1500
47.	Coordinate home station activities	2 hrs	1700
48.	Final AAR	2 hrs	1900
	Total Time: 96 hrs		
	* Events occur simultaneously.		

b.   Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Support requirements must be coordinated consistent with the level of evaluation (section, staff element, etc.) being conducted. OPFOR players and controllers must also be identified early to support free play if required. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experiences with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters will prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

c.   Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site. Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements are the basis for site selection. For this evaluation, an area of ___ meters X ___ meters is required. The OPFOR is positioned according to threat doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area required to support the evaluation.

d.   Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

(1)   The fire control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.

(2)   The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters that will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the OCs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the OC may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25-series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

Table 6-2. Consolidated Support Requirements
CSG support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate STX and the requirements for the headquarters and headquarters company when these elements participate. **NOTE**: The consolidated support requirements outlined are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.

6-3.   SELECTING THE OBSERVER CONTROLLERS.

a.   OCs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. They should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position.

b.   The following are minimum rank and experience requirements for the evaluators:

(1)   CSG OC will be an officer with CSG command/staff experience.

(2)   Group OC will be an officer with Group command experience.

(3)   Battalion OCs will be a officer with command experience.

(4)   Recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the OCs.

6-4.   TRAINING THE OBSERVER CONTROLLERS. OCs standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas:

a.   Evaluation Design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. OCs must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

b.   MILES. Each OC, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

c.   Evaluation Control System. This system ensures the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

(1)   Rules of engagement.

(2)   OC duties and responsibilities.

(3)   Communication system.

(4)   Evaluation data collection plan.

d.   Safety. During any training event, all soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious. Evaluators must ensure all events are conducted within established safety constraints. Prior to the beginning of each event, all personnel will be briefed on specific safety measures to be taken during execution.

6-5.   SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR. The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influence the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent that realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapons, and skill.

a.   Selection. Any qualified Skill Level 1 or 2 soldiers can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b.   Training. The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

(1)   Installation and operation of the MILES devices.

(2)   Rules of engagement.

(3)   Threat small unit tactics.

(4)   Training scenarios.

(5)   OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.

(6)   Safety.

c.   OPFOR Strength.

(1)   Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three-to-one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2)   Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one ratio of superiority, because anything less will not effectively challenge the unit when defending. The OPFOR should have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establishes their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-6.   CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION. Evaluations are divided into three distinct segments. Each segment requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.

a.   Pre-evaluation.

(1)   The senior OC and all other OCs must recon the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's AO.

(2)   The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the STXs and FTXs in Chapter 4.

(3)   Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions as required.

(4)   The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.

(5)   The OCs should make an equipment function check following each unit move, after unit leaders have issued their instructions.

b.   Evaluation. The senior evaluator controls the exercise and oversees the recording of mission performance. Evaluators resolve all conflicts and record all staff

limitations as they arise. A debriefing should take place between modules to clear up any questions. Evaluators must remain neutral throughout the evaluation.

(1)   The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, the team uses measures established in both the movement order and in Paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD and FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior OC for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense; instead it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior OC has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. Other OCs do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the unit's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. OCs are neutral throughout the evaluation.

(2)   Once the senior OC issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the events and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point, all successive parts begin with a FRAGO.

(3)   The senior OC can terminate any one of the parts of an exercise when the unit has completed all the events and actions in the segment or has suffered so many casualties or damage the part cannot be completed. The OC must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the OC's Task Summary Sheets and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. At this time, OCs must perform the following actions:

(a)   Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b)   Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c)   Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior OC directs the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4)   The OCs should follow these guidelines:

(a)   Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups).

(b)   Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c)   Enforce rules of engagement.

(d)   Observe critical tactical events of time. OCs must spot and record any action which might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e)   Record travel routes and unit's location.

(f)   Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit's location, direction of travel, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR actions to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g)   Enforce safety.

(h)   Terminate mission, as appropriate.

c.   Post Evaluation. After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following functions:

(1)   The unit OC debriefs subordinate OCs and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2)   The unit OC must complete the task summary sheets.

(3)   The unit must turn in all completes OC packets (with the OC scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4)   The unit OC must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.

(5)   Each element OC should conduct an AAR of his element's performance.

6-7.   RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION.

a.   The evaluating headquarters develops the data recording instruments for the OCs. The Unit Data Sheet, Figure 6-3, documents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet, Figure 6-4, documents weather information in order to compare missions under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report, Figure 6-5, documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

b.   The senior OC has the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on his own findings and subordinate OCs' input. Subordinate OCs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from Chapter 5 and Task Summary Sheets, Figure 6-2) to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior OC compiles the external evaluation results as proscribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the unit OC may be addressed in the senior OC comments portion of the UPW.

           (1)   Unit Data Sheet (Figure 6-3). This report records personnel and equipment status information.

           (2)   Environmental Data Report (Figure 6-4). This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

           (3)   Personnel and Equipment Loss Report (Figure 6-5). This report records information concerning HQ, CSG personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET – Page 1						
1. UNIT DESIGNATION:_____				DATE:_____		
2. UNIT LEADERS (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
CDR	COL	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
XO	LTC/MAJ	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
PERSONNEL AND ADMIN	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SECURITY, PLANS AND OPS	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
PLANS AND OPS BRANCH	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
LEGAL OFFICER	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SPT OPNS OFF	LTC/MAJ	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
TRANS OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
MAINT MGMT OFF	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
AMMO OFF	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
CONTRACT MGMT OFF	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
INFOR SYS TECH	CW0/CW1	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
S&S OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SUPPLY MGMT OFF	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SUBSISTENCE OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
PETROLEUM SUP OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
MAINT MGMT OFF	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
rsARMT/CBT MGMT OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
AUTOMATION OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
HOST NAT SPT COORD	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
INTEL OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SUP SYS TECH	CWO/CW1	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
CMD FOOD SVC TECH	CWO/WO1	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
CHEM OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
CHAPLAIN	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
PLANS OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
		1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
		1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
		1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
		1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19

Figure 6-3. Example Unit Data Sheet

UNIT DATA SHEET – Page 2
3.   UNIT STRENGTH (Excluding Leaders): _____
4.   EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (Major Items): _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
5.   COMMENTS: _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
EVALUATOR SIGNATURE: _____

Figure 6-3. Example Unit Data Sheet (continued)

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:
DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:
DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:
1.   WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) CLEAR   PARTLY CLOUDY   HAZY   RAINING   SNOWING   FOG OTHER: TEMPERATURE:
2.   GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) DRY   WET   ICE   SNOW   OTHER:
3.   LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) DAY   NIGHT MOON PHASE: 1/4   1/2   3/4   FULL AVERAGE RANGE OF VISIBILITY DUE TO LIGHT:
4.   TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description) FLAT   ROLLING   MOUNTAINOUS   JUNGLE   DESERT   URBAN   ARCTIC OTHER: TOP SOIL: SANDY   ROCKY   CLAY   OTHER: AVERAGE RANGE OF VISIBILITY DUE TO TERRAIN:
5.   REMARKS:

Figure 6-4. Example Environmental Data Sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
MISSION TITLE OR TASK #	DATE/ TIME OF ENEMY CONTACT	FRIENDLY KIA/WIA	ENEMY KIA/WIA	FRIENDLY VEHICLES DESTROYED	ENEMY VEHICLES DESTROYED

COMMENTS:

Figure 6-5. Example Personnel and Equipment Loss Report

6-8.   CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW.

a.   General. AARs should be planned at logical intervals during the exercise. Identifying performance deficiencies while still fresh, getting everyone involved, and preventing the reinforcement of bad habits are critical to improved performance. On-the-spot evaluations and corrections should also be emphasized.

b.   Feedback. Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "database" for key points. The AAR leader draws information from each member becomes an important part of the discussion. This information is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action.

c.   Preparing the After Action Review. AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1)   Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The OCs should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so they can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2)   Observe the exercise. This is an active process. The emphasis is on noting those actions that make the difference between the unit's success and failure. OCs do not need to remain close to the unit leader, since more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Because unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, OCs must be present when the commander issues the order. OCs should position themselves where they can best observe anticipated critical events. Examples of critical events include:

(a)   Conducting a road march.

(b)   Crossing a radiological contaminated area.

(c)   Performing unit supply operations.

(d)   Responding to an NBC attack.

(3)   Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. Usually, the OPFOR or unit objectives are suitable for assembling the players and conducting AARs.

(4)   Debrief the OCs. While the units are moving to the selected site, the OCs should be debriefed. The senior OC must have a complete understanding of

what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's events in the order in which they occurred.

       (5)   Review the events. After the senior OC has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews and ranks the events in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and their contributions to the exercise outcome. He selects as many events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

      d.   Conducting the After Action Review. Conducting the AAR requires five steps:

       (1)   Organize the participants. When the senior OC and AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's OC is responsible for the element he observed.

       (2)   State the training objectives. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

       (3)   Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and, as the AAR proceeds, have the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. The AAR leader should:

       (a)   Avoid giving a critique or lecture.

       (b)   Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.

       (c)   Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.

       (d)   Suggest the players discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened, and how it could be done better.

       (e)   Focus the discussion to ensure important tactical lessons are made explicit.

       (f)   Relate events to subsequent results.

       (g)   Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

(h)   Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.

(i)   Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(4)   Review the sequence of events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise. Ask the following questions:

(a)   Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?

(b)   Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?

(c)   Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?

(d)   Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?

(e)   Were there incidents of fratricide or near fratricide, and how can they be avoided in the future?

(5)   Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses, and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader:

(a)   Maintains order and discipline.

(b)   Reviews the training objectives.

(c)   Addresses important events as they occurred and how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(d)   Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.

(e)   Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(f)   Involves participants in the discussion.

(g)   Clearly and concisely summarizes the key teaching points and provides new training objectives.

(h)   Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models in the AAR.

e.   Reference Materials. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-6, TC 25-20, and FM 7-0
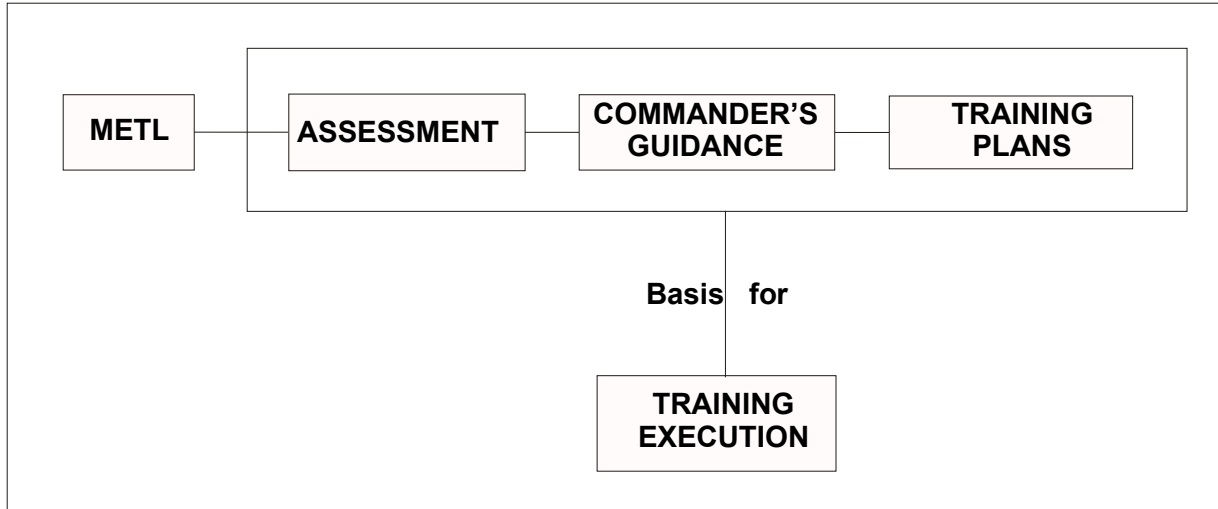
Appendix A

Combined Arms Training Strategy

A-1.   PURPOSE.   This appendix provides, as part of the CATS, the Combined Arms Command's (CAC) recommended strategy for training a unit. This appendix has three parts.   The first part describes CATS and explains how CATS fits into the training planning process as described in FM 7-0. The second part explains how to read the strategies, and the third part explains how to integrate CATS into the long-range and near-term planning process.

Section I. CATS AND THE TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS

A-2.   TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS.   FM 7-0 describes a three-step process, based on the unit METL and ending in training execution. Figure A-1 is a graphic representation of the process. CATS do not replace this process. It is a training tool that enhances the commander's ability to use the training planning process to manage his training and optimize the use of scarce training resources. CATS unit strategies describe recommended training events and the event frequency. Units may train all or some of these events. A unit's training frequency may or may not match that in the CATS strategy. Whatever a unit's training requirements, CATS provides a framework for use in making decisions on the training to be conducted. The training strategy outlined in CATS is designed to help commanders at all levels develop and execute a more efficient training program. Any given strategy addresses all units Army-wide of the same TOE. The specific makeup of the unit's training program is dependent upon its METL, guidance from higher headquarters, and the resources available at the installation or training environment. CATS unit strategies are descriptive in nature and intended for use as a guide for commanders.

A-3.   CATS.   CATS is the Army's training strategy that integrates combined arms training for heavy, light, and special operations forces, the active and reserve components, in the unit and institution environments. It provides an azimuth to guide Army training and identifies the resources required to support that training. It enables the Army to identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources. CATS evolved from the need for more efficient training based on expected resource constraints. At US Army level, CATS gives the rationale for acquiring training resources through the development of unit and institutional training strategies.   The strategies provide recommended training frequencies and identify the training resources needed to support the strategy.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│    ┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐   │
│  ┌──────┐   ┌──────────────┐   ┌──────────────┐   ┌──────────────┐ │   │
│  │ METL │───│  ASSESSMENT  │───│  COMMANDER'S │───│   TRAINING   │ │   │
│  │      │   │              │   │   GUIDANCE   │   │    PLANS     │ │   │
│  └──────┘   └──────────────┘   └──────────────┘   └──────────────┘ │   │
│    └──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘   │
│                                                                        │
│                              Basis  for                                │
│                                                                        │
│                          ┌──────────────┐                              │
│                          │   TRAINING   │                              │
│                          │  EXECUTION   │                              │
│                          └──────────────┘                              │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Figure A-1. Training Planning Process

A-4. TERMS. The information in this paragraph explains the terms listed in Figure A-1. For information on the training planning process, see FM 7-0.

a. The METL is an unconstrained, unprioritized statement of the tasks required to complete the wartime mission. It is the source of training planning activities.
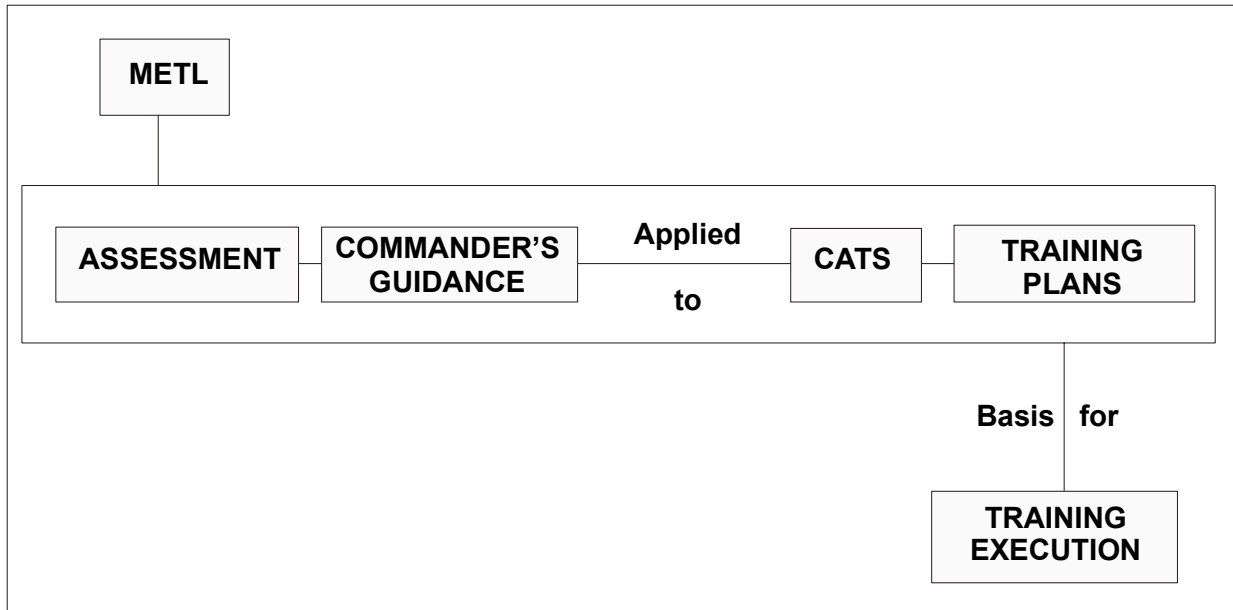
b. Assessment is the beginning of the training planning process. It is the commander's evaluation of the unit's training level based on the METL.

c. Commander's Guidance consists of long-range planning calendars and Command Training Guidance (CTG) issued to the battalion from the division. It serves to focus the training efforts of the battalion in accordance with the division commander's priorities. The battalion in turn issues CTG for its subordinate companies.

d. Training Plans are a collection of schedules and other supporting documents which carry out the commander's guidance.

e. Training Execution is the actual performance of the training scheduled in the training plans portion of the training planning process.

A-5. APPLYING CATS. The information in this paragraph explains how to apply CATS to the training planning process. Figure A-2 is a graphic representation of the process.

Figure A-2. Training Planning Process

a.   The commander determines the exact events and tasks to be trained based on his METL and guidance from higher headquarters.

(1)   The unit trains tasks during events established in FM 7-0, and CATS.

(2)   The unit trains its METL by training soldiers, and their appropriate sections, in their wartime tasks. The unit applies CATS to its training plans by applying the training events, frequencies, and critical gates contained in strategies to the CTG in developing training plans. The commander and training officer/NCO uses the critical gates identified in the strategies to ensure basic tasks are trained prior to moving on to training more complex or resource intensive tasks. The performance of training gate tasks is always evaluated by the commander and serves as the basis of additional training efforts. For example, a TEWT should be used to train METL tasks prior to conducting a complex and resource intensive event like a CFX.

(3)   Training Aids, Devices, Simulators and Simulations (TADSS) based training uses a mix of TADSS and live fire/field training. The strategies show those TADSS within the Army's system or year projected for fielding. The TADSS may not be available at the installation or training environment.

b.   The strategies can be viewed as training plans for generic type units. By inserting extra steps into the training process, commanders evaluate and apply the components of their CATS strategies to their particular training programs and environments. The optimal frequencies identified in the strategies may have to be adjusted depending upon the unit's training status or its resourcing.

Section II. STRATEGY ORGANIZATION AND INTERPRETATION

A-6. UNIT TRAINING STRATEGIES. This paragraph explains the strategy organization and explains how to use it. The unit training portion of CATS is a series of separately generated training strategies. These strategies describe the events, frequencies, and resources recommended training to standard. As part of the unit training strategy development process, TRADOC established a standard format to depict unit training strategies. The unit training strategy is a descriptive strategy for training and sustaining soldier and collective task proficiency. The tasks to be trained at a particular unit will be based on the unit's METL. The unit strategy in this appendix covers all CSS units. The unit training strategies have three major components -- Maneuver, Gunnery, and Soldier.

a.   The Maneuver strategy is descriptive. It provides recommended training frequencies for collective training events in a unit. The events come from FM 7-0, or the glossary of this MTP. The Maneuver strategy helps a unit maintain MTP standards and depicts the resources required to support training events.

b.   The Gunnery Component has individual/crew served weapons strategies that the Infantry school developed. These strategies can also be found in DA Pam 350-38 and DA Pam 350-39, or appropriate weapons FMs.

c.   The Soldier Component is a descriptive strategy for training individual soldier skills. It lists the resources required to support soldier training, and links with and supports a collective training strategy.

A-7. ELEMENTS OF THE UNIT STRATEGIES. The unit training strategies are in matrix formats. The matrix lists the unit size levels, training events or training exercises, training event frequencies for both active and reserve components, critical gates, and training resources.

a.   Training levels are units, training elements, or echelons (such as individual through corps) that execute specific training events.

b.   Training events are types of collective training exercises identified in FM 7-0 or the glossary of this MTP. Training events identify the recommended exercises units should conduct to train to MTP standard. Units normally conduct events in a progressive and sequential manner. For example, a TEWT should be conducted before conducting a CFX. A CPX should be conducted before conducting an FTX.

c.   Training event frequencies are the suggested number of times that an event should be trained during a training cycle to attain or maintain MTP standards. AC units use an annual cycle. RC units conduct training on a 4-year cycle.

d.   A critical gate is a training event that must be completed and evaluated before moving onto a more complex, resource intensive or hazardous event. MACOM or field commanders may direct performance of critical gate training tasks to an established standard prior to performing more complex or resource intensive tasks.

e.   The unit training strategies identify the resources that will be used to support each training event. These resources are:

OPTEMPO

Ammunition

TADSS

Training Land

Training Ranges

The resources listed in the strategies represent those that are available now.

(1)   OPTEMPO figures reflect the annual operating miles/hours for the base vehicle for a particular unit, per event. The OPTEMPO figures come from the Battalion Level Training Model (BLTM). When no BLTM was available, the proponents developed an estimated OPTEMPO required to support all the annual iterations of that training event.

(2)   Ammunition figures reflect the ammunition required to support training events and come from DA Pam 350-38. The maneuver/collective strategies reflect blank ammunition requirements. Live ammunition appears on the Gunnery strategies. Pyrotechnics appear on the maneuver/collective component.

(3)   TADSS are training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations that support specific training events. TADSS listed are those in the system and non-system TADSS that are fielded. For example, Battalion and BBS are identified as a primary TADSS to support battalion staff and headquarters unit/detachment's CPX training.

(4)   Training Land is a resource category that will list the recommended training land in kilometers by event to conduct maneuver training. The reference is TC 25-1. A particular unit will determine the actual amount of training land needed by METT-TC and the characteristics or condition of the training land available to the unit.

(5)   Training Range is a resource requirement that supports weapons training events. The information comes from TC 25-8.

A-8. GUIDE TO THE UNIT STRATEGIES. This paragraph provides a guide to reading the collective, gunnery, and soldier components. Generally, the leader using

the matrices for planning will have a METL (or other list of critical tasks in which his unit must be proficient) and will be looking for guidance about appropriate training methods. The key to using CATS for unit training management understands the strategy and its various components. The strategy is organized by functional area and echelon to be trained. It has eight interactive components, expressed as columns in a matrix format. An example matrix for one mission/task is at Table A-1. The columns provide the following information:

Column One records the mission and supporting tasks requiring training. The entries in Column One consist of the appropriate MTP missions and tasks.

Column Two shows the desired frequency of and interval between repetitions of the task(s). Both the unit's personnel turnover rate and the rate of progress need to be considered in determining how frequently to train.

Column Three lists alternative "training means"--combinations of events and media (live or simulation)--that might be selected to train this mission/task. Commanders must select an appropriate means for each training event conducted.

Column Four lists the estimated duration of each means (determined by the event more than by the medium). Commanders need to ensure adequate time is available for each task.

Column Five shows a means quality rating, related to the cost and realism of the event/medium. When choosing events and media, the resource costs of different training media must be balanced against the needs for realism and repetition. Generally, as the unit becomes more proficient, realism should increase.

˜ An "A" level means is identified as a CTC deployment and training activity.

˜ A "B" level means is described as a well assigned home station training exercise.

˜ A "C" level means is described as a partial task training exercise.

˜ A "D" level means is described as a subtask training exercise.

Column Six identifies the training unit/audience for the event. The information in this column is drawn from the appropriate MTP.

Column Seven gives the prerequisite training (training "gates") that should be attained by the members of the training audience prior to the execution of the means in Column 3. If the training audience has not attained the specified level of proficiency, the means cannot achieve the quality indicated in Column 5.

Column Eight provides a place to record detailed comments concerning the purpose and desired outcome of each event along with other remarks or guidance.

Table A-1. Example CATS Task Matrix							
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4	Column 5	Column 6	Column 7	Column 8
Task	Freq/ Interval	Means (Event/ Media)	Estimated Duration	Quality (A-D)	Training Unit (Audience)	Prerequisite Training Gates	Remarks: Includes purpose of event; outcome being supported; comments about execution of the event/ constraints posed by TADSS/et al
RECALL PROCEDURES XX-X-XXXX To train unit on recall procedures: Perform Deployment Alert Activities 63-2-8001	12/ Monthly	6 STX (Telephonic/ Non-telephonic Alert)	2-3 hrs.	C	Battalion	Telephonic and non-telephonic recall procedures and rosters current	**PURPOSE**: To verify recall rosters and procedures. **OUTCOME**: To maintain the ability to rapidly alert, assemble, prepare, deploy, marshal, and out-load on any mode of transportation, all TOE equipment and personnel with minimum outside assistance. **REMARKS**: None.

Section III. INTEGRATION OF CATS IN THE PLANNING PROCESS

A-9.   INTEGRATING CATS. This portion of the appendix explains how to integrate CATS into the planning process. It focuses on long range planning conducted at brigade and above. To understand how CATS fits into this process, a brief summary of the planning process is provided.

A-10. THE PLANNING PROCESS.

a.   Long Range Planning.

(1)   Assessment. Assessment is the start of the long range planning process. Using their evaluations, the input of subordinate leaders, and the results of training evaluations, commanders assess their unit's training level on METL tasks. The assessment serves as the basis for the commander's training strategy for sustainment and improvement training. Commanders at all levels do this assessment function. An integral part of the assessment is the identification of required training resources and shortfalls. The commander also must synchronize the actions of supporting units and agencies to ensure proper training execution.

(2)   In creating their training strategy, commanders ensure training:

Is METL focused

Incorporates combined arms.

Identifies who, when, and where to train.

Has a logical sequence of execution.

Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.

Determines the frequencies of a given task.

Coordinates all events.

Matches resources to requirements.

The strategy that meets these requirements results in the commander's training guidance.

(3)   Senior commanders (brigade and above) provide subordinate commanders with long range training calendars, the commander's training guidance, resources to train, and protection from training distorters. Commanders often provide recommended training events frequency.

b.   Short-Range Planning. The short range planning process refines the guidance that results from the long range planning process. Subordinate commanders use this guidance to create their training calendars. Guidance on the short-range training process can be found in the CATS appendix in the unit's MTP.

A-11. CATS AND THE PLANNING PROCESS. CATS serve the unit commander as a training management and training resource identification tool. As a training management tool, it allows the unit commander to more efficiently manage his training program, with limited resource availability. As a training resource identification tool, it

identifies the resources within the Army's inventory to conduct training. The availability of those resources will vary, depending on location.

      a.   Long-Range Planning.

      (1)   Assessment.

      (2)   The CATS strategy:

      Is METL focused.

      Incorporates combined arms.

      Identifies who, when, and where to train.

      Has a logical sequence of execution.

      Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.

      Determines the frequencies of a given task.

      Coordinates all events.

      Matches resources to requirements.

      (3)   CATS provide a convenient vehicle for the transmission of the commander's training guidance. It serves as the basis for the long-range calendar and provides subordinate commanders with recommended frequencies of training events.

      (4)   Execution. The following example shows how CATS could fit into the long range planning process.

      b.   The Unit Maneuver Training Strategy lists the recommended frequencies for required annual training events. In particular, for the STX it lists 10 iterations. The optimal training frequency is for the unit staff to train the event 10 times in a given year, 1 STX per month for 10 months. The frequencies listed in CATS would be trained as follows:

      2 events per year - semi-annual training

      4 events per year - quarterly training

      6 events per year - bimonthly training

      c.   Naturally, the training year may not support such a neat breakdown of training events. CATS provide the flexibility to adjust the events to meet each unit's

specific requirements. A key point here is the idea of critical gates. As one can see, STX is a critical gate for FTX. Every task that is a critical gate should be conducted before conducting the more complex task. Gates serve to ensure basic tasks essential to the successful performance of complex tasks are trained and evaluated prior to the performance of complex tasks. Critical gates may also serve as a type of preview or "rehearsal" for a follow-on training event.

      d. Assume the commander has identified platoon leadership as a particular weakness in the unit. The commander decides he wants to run platoon STX exercises twice a month to train the platoon/section/crew/squad leadership elements.

      e. Using this guidance, simply go to the unit strategy and substitute 24 for 12. If the frequencies for the other events are acceptable, the unit now has a coupled commander's strategy. In this manner a CATS base strategy is tailored to meet a commander's assessment and training needs.

      f. Short Range Planning. The application of CATS Battalion Staff and headquarters unit's unit training strategies to battalion short range planning and the battalion quarterly training calendar is seen as follows:

Recommended Unit Calendar Using CATS Maneuver Strategy.

1st Month

Week 1	Drill Training (1)
Week 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 4	STX (2)

NOTES:

1. The collective tasks trained during the weekly Cell/Staff/Section training periods support unit METL tasks and are trained according to the commander's assessment and his priorities outlined in the CTG. Soldier training tasks trained during this month are soldier/leader supporting performance of the collective tasks to be trained during the weekly staff training sessions or the monthly STX.

2. Performance of the STX substitutes for Cell/Staff/Section Training in week four (4).

2nd Month

Week 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 3	TOCEX (2)
Week 4	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)

Notes:

1.   Training during these weekly periods concentrates on staff METL tasks identified as priority in the CTG. Training time here could also be spent training tasks evaluated as NO GO during the 1st month's training periods. Logistics Coordination Exercises (LCXs) and Maneuver Coordination Exercises (MCXs) can also be used to enhance staff coordination.

2.   Performance of the Tactical Operations Center Exercise (TOCEX) substitutes for performance of the monthly STAFFEX. Commanders may have to modify or extend the training period of the TOCEX to include training tasks that would have been normally performed in the STAFFEX.

3.   Tasks trained here can be tasks rated as NO GO during the previous week's TOCEX.

3rd Month

Week 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 2	TEWT (1)
Week 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 4	CPX (2)

Notes:

1.   This TEWT substitutes for performance of the Call/Staff/Section training that would normally be performed this week. Ideally, the TEWT's discussion points and learning objectives would be developed to support/reinforce collective tasks trained in the previous month's Cell/Staff/Section, STAFFEX, or TOCEX training periods. The commander may also structure the TEWT to train staff coordination and integration tasks as key for the upcoming CPX.

2.   Substitutes for performance of the STAFFEX normally performed during the month.

As seen in the above, the commander structures his training program using recommended CATS training events, frequencies, and critical gates to support METL training.   Weekly or monthly training events can be conducted independently or integrated into other collective training exercises.

In scheduling training, the commander should take maximum advantage of higher headquarters directed events to accomplish recommended CATS training events.

g.   Horizontal and Vertical Integration. In executing this training strategy, the commander vertically integrates his training requirements with the battalion's/group's training requirements. Additionally, the unit's training strategy is horizontally integrated with other companies in the battalion to ensure combined arms' training is carried out
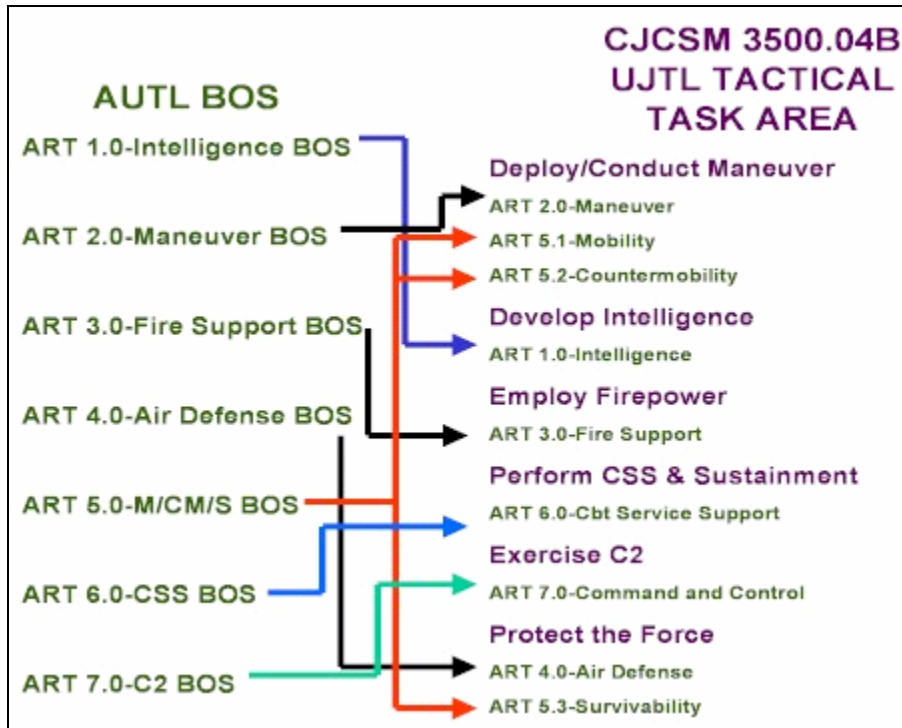
Appendix B
Army Universal Task List

The Army is in the process of developing a Army Universal Task List (AUTL). AUTL tasks are currently being incorporated into collective training products such as mission training plans (MTPs). These tasks will be listed in FM 7-15, The Army Universal Task List.

The AUTL is a tactical task list that supplements the Universal Joint Task List (UJTL), The UJTL covers all U.S. military services and provides a common language and reference system for various users to include joint force commanders, strategic and operational planners, combat developers, combat support personnel, and trainers. The AUTL is a comprehensive listing of Army tactical-level tasks and functions that complements the UJTL by providing tactical-level Army-specific tasks (ARTs).

The AUTL provides a common language and reference system for doctrine, combat, and training developers. The link between planners and trainers will help ensure that forces train the way they will fight. The AUTL also provides a basis for establishing unit-specific Army training and evaluation program mission training plans (MTPs). The AUTL's linkage to the UJTL at the operational and strategic level aids analysts and planners in understanding and integrating joint operations.

The six UJTL tactical task areas do not reflect how the Army has traditionally organized its physical means (soldiers, organizations, and equipment) to accomplish tactical missions. The Army organizes ARTs under the seven battlefield operating systems (BOSs) instead. A battlefield operating system does not represent an Army branch or proponent. Any Army organization, regardless of branch or echelon, performs tasks related to one or more of the BOS. The figure below illustrates the linkages between the seven BOS and the six UJTL tactical task areas.

Universal Joint Task List (UJTL) Tactical Tasks

1.   Deploy/Conduct Maneuver.   The deploy/conduct maneuver task area is the movement of combat forces to achieve a position of advantage with respect to enemy forces.   This task area includes the employment of forces on the battlefield in combination with direct fire or fire potential.   Indirect fires are included under the "Employ Fires" task area. It also includes the conduct of tactical movement of all types of units, mobility operations, counter-mobility operations, and tactical actions associated with force protection.

2.   Develop Intelligence.   The develop intelligence task area is the activity to generate knowledge of and products portraying the enemy and environment features required by a commander in planning and conducting operations. It is derived from an analysis of information on the enemy's capabilities, intentions, vulnerabilities, and the environment.   This includes the development of tactical intelligence requirements, the planning of collection activities, the collection of relevant information, the processing of that information to include the development of targeting information, and the preparation and dissemination of intelligence.

3.   Employ Fires.   The employ fires task area encompasses the collective and coordinated use of target-acquisition data, indirect-fire weapons, fixed-wing aircraft, offensive information operations, and other lethal and non-lethal means against targets located throughout an area of operations.   The essential features of the employ fires task area are the acquiring and processing of tactical targets and the employment of fire support.   Note: The acquisition and attack of aerial targets are addressed in "Protect the Force" task area.

4.   Perform CSS and Sustainment. The perform CSS and sustainment task area is the support and service provided to sustain forces in an area of operations during war and during stability operations and support operations. This tactical task area involves the provision of supply, maintenance, transportation, CHS, personnel, legal, finance, religious, public affairs, contracting, distribution management, and field and other service support (such as general engineering support) required to sustain an operating force in an area of operations that may be joint, multinational, interagency, or a combination of these forces. Combat service support may be required to support contractors, civilians (such as refugees and disaster victims), or members of other governmental and non-governmental agencies. It includes civil-military operations.

5.   Exercise Command and Control. The exercise C2 task area is the exercise and direction by a properly designated commander over assigned and available forces in the accomplishment of the mission. C2 tasks are performed through an arrangement of personnel, information management, procedures, and equipment and facilities employed by a commander in planning, preparing for, executing, and assessing the conduct of operations to accomplish the mission. It includes the acquisition and management of information, the maintenance of situational understanding, the conduct of situational estimates to determine actions, applying risk management, and the direction and leading of subordinate forces.

6.   Protect the Force. The protect the force task area is the protection of the tactical force's fighting potential so it can be applied at the appropriate time and place. It includes those measures the force takes to remain viable and functional by protecting itself from the effects of (or recovery from) enemy activities. Those active and passive measures encompass the following:

a.   Conduct air/missile defense.

b.   Protect against enemy hazards within the AO.

c.   Conduct local security operations.

d.   Conduct defensive information operations.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY BLANK

Glossary

1LT
First Lieutenant

1SG
First sergeant

3S
Standard supply system

A/D
Analog to digital

A/SPOE
Aerial/sea port of embarkation

AA (1)
Avenues of approach

AA (2)
Assembly area

AACG
Arrival Airfield Control Group

AAIS
Army Automation Information System

AAR
After action review

ABCS
Army Battle Command System

AC
Active Component

acft
Aircraft

ACIPS
Army Casualty Information Processing System

ACIPS-LT
Army Casualty Information Processing System-Light

ACR
Ammunition Condition Report

ACS
Army Community Service

ADAPCP
Alcohol and Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Program

Addition skill identifier
Identifies specialized skills that are closely related to, but in addition to, those required by an MOS or area of concentration (officers).

ADC
Area Damage Control

ADL
Army Doctrinal Literature

ADP
Automated data processing

ADTL
Army wide doctrinal and training literature

ADTLP
Army wide Doctrinal and Training Literature Program

AER
Army Emergency Relief

AG
Adjutant General/Adjutant General Corps

AGR
Active Guard Reserve

AIPD
Army Institute for Professional Development

ALOC
Areas and Logistics Operations Center

AM
>Amplitude modulation

AMC
>Army Materiel Command

AMCCOM
>United States Army Armament, Munitions, and Chemical Command

AMC-LSA
>Army Materiel Command Logistics Support Activity

AMEDD
>Army Medical Department

Ammunition (ammo)
>A generic term that includes all kinds of missiles used against an enemy, such as bullets, projectiles, rockets, grenades, torpedoes, bombs, and guided missiles. It includes their necessary propellants, primers, fuses, and detonators and their charges of conventional explosives, nuclear explosives, chemicals, or other materials. In the broadcast sense the term includes all. In the most restricted sense, the term includes a complete round and all components, required for firing a weapon such as a pistol, rifle, or cannon. Generally the term is used or taken in its broadest sense unless a more restricted sense is indicated or is implied.

AMTP
>ARTEP Mission Training Plan

Analysis
>One of five phases of the training development process. It is the process used to determine if training is required; determine who (soldiers/units) needs training; identify the critical tasks they must be able to perform for survival on the battlefield; and identify the standards, conditions, performance measures, and other criteria needed to perform each task. The five types of training analyses are --Needs Analysis, Mission Analysis, Collective Critical Task Analysis, Job Analysis, and Individual Critical Task Analysis

AO
>Area of operations

AOAP
>Army Oil Analysis Program

AOC
Area of concentration

AOR
Area of responsibility

AP
Antipersonnel

APFT
Army physical fitness test

API
American Petroleum Institute

APOD
Aerial Port of Debarkation

APOE
Aerial Port of Embarkation

App
Appendix

AR
Army regulation

ARC
American Red Cross

ARFOR
Army Forces

ARNG
Army National Guard

ARTEP
Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP MTP
ARTEP mission training plan

ARTEP-MTP
Army Training and Evaluation Program Mission Training Plan

ASAS
    All Source Analysis System

ASAT
    Automated Systems Approach to Training

ASG
    Area Support Group

ASL
    Authorized stockage list

ASP
    Ammunition supply point

AT
    Antitank

ATCCS
    Army Tactical Command and Control System

AUEL
    Automated unit equipment list

AUTL
    Army Universal Task List

Base Terminal
    The initial pipeline facility for receiving, storing, and distributing petroleum products that enter a theater of operations.

Battalion rollup
    A consolidated list (by-line item number and unit identification code) of the hand-receipted property within a battalion.

Battle focus
    A process to guide the planning, execution, and assessment of the organization's training program to ensure they train as they are going to fight.

BCOC (1)
    Base Cluster Operations Center

Bde
    Brigade

BDOC
Base defense operations center

BF
Battle Fatigue

BFACS
Battlefield Functional Area Control System

BN
Battalion

BOS
Battlefield Operating System

BRIL
Baseline Resource Item List

BSA
Brigade support area

C2
Command and control

C3CM
Command, control, and communications countermeasure

CA
civil affairs

CAC
Combined Arms Command

CAS
Close air support

CASCOM
Combined Arms Support Command

CALFEX
Combined Arms Live Fire Exercise

CATS
Combined Arms Training Strategy

CCI
  Controlled cryptographic item

CCIR
  Commander's Critical Information Requirements

CDR
  Commander

CE
  Communications-electronics

CFX
  Command field exercise

CHS
  Command Health Support

CIP
  Command Inspection Program

CMD
  Command

CMO
  Civil Military Operations

CO (1)
  Company

COA
  Course of action

COMEX
  Communications exercise

comm.
  Communication

COMMZ
  Communications zone

COMSEC
  Communications security

CONPLANS
   Contingency Plans

CONUS
   Continental United States

COOP
   Continuity of Operations

COSCOM
   Corps supports command

CP
   Command post

CPT
   Captain

CPX
   Command post exercise

CS
   Combat support; O-chlorobenzyl-malononitrile

CSA
   Corps supports area

CSG
   Core Support Group

CSM
   Command Sergeant Major

CSS
   Combat service support

CSSAMO
   Combat Service Support Automation Management Office

CSSCS
   Combat Service Support Control System

CT
   Common task

CTC
> Combat Training Center

CTG
> Command Training Guidance

CTIL
> Commander's Tracked Items List

CTP
> Coordinated Test Program

CTT
> Common task test

CTX
> Combined tactical/training exercise

CUST
> Customer

DA
> Department of the Army

DAACG
> Departure/arrival airfield control group

DACG
> Departure airfield control group

DAMMS-R
> Department of the Army Movement Management System - Redesigned

DC (1)
> Direct current

DE
> Directed energy

Decon
> Decontamination

DEL
> Deployment equipment list

DEPEX
Deployment exercise

Det
Detachment

DIR
Directive

DISCOM
Division support command

Div
Division

DOD
Department of Defense

DOL
Director of Logistics

DOS
Days of supply

DPCA
Director of personnel and community activities

DS
Direct support

DSB
Division support battalion

DSU
Direct Support Unit

Ea
Each

EAD
Echelons above division

ECCM
Electronic counter-countermeasures

ECM
   Electronic countermeasures

EEFI
   Essential elements of friendly information

ELSEC
   Electronic security

EOC
   Emergency Operations Center

EOD
   Explosive ordnance disposal

EPW
   Enemy prisoner of war

ETA
   Estimated time of arrival

EW
   Electronic warfare

EXEVAL
   External evaluation

FAD
   Force activity designator; finance and accounting document

FASCAM
   Family of Scatterable Mines

FBCB2
   Force XXI Battle Command – Brigade and Below

FDC
   Fire Direction Center

FEBA
   Forward Edge of the Battle Area

Fld
   Field

FLE
  Forward logistics element

FLOT
  Forward line of own troops

FM
  Frequency modulation; field manual

FMO
  Freight Move Officer

FORSCOM
  Forces Command

FRAGO
  Fragmentary order

FSG
  Federal supply group; family support group

FSOP
  Field standard operating procedure

FTX
  Field training exercise

G1
  Assistant Chief of Staff, Personnel

G2
  Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence

G3
  Assistant Chief of Staff, Operations

G4
  Assistant Chief of Staff, Logistics

Gal
  Gallon

GFCI
  Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters

GPD
> Gallons per day

GRREG
> Graves's registration

GS
> General support

HAZCOM
> Hazardous Communications

HAZMAT
> Hazardous material

HHC
> Headquarters and Headquarters Company

HHD
> Headquarters and headquarters detachment

HN
> Host nation

HNS
> Host nation support

HQ
> Headquarters

HSS
> Health service support

HUMINT
> Human intelligence

IAW
> In accordance with

ICUMO
> Installation command unit movement officer

ID
> Identification

INF
 Infantry

INTSUM
 Intelligence summary

IPB
 Intelligence Preparation of Battlefield

IR
 Infrared

ITEP
 Individual Training Evaluation Program

ITO
 Installation transportation officer

JFC
 Joint Forces Commander

JP
 Joint Publication

JTX
 Joint tactical exercise

KIA
 Killed in action

Km
 Kilometer

Lab
 Laboratory

LAW
 Light antitank weapon

Lb
 Pound

LCX
 Logistics coordination exercise

LD
Line of departure

Ldr
Leader

LFX
Live Fire Exercise

LOC (2)
Logistics Operations Center

LOGCAP
Logistics civilian augmentation program

LOGPAC
Logistics package

LOGSTAT
Logistic statistics

LP
Listening post

LPB
Logistics preparation of the battlefield

LPT
Logistics preparation of the theater

LSE
Logistics support element

LT
Lieutenant

LTA
Local training area

LTC
Lieutenant colonel

MA
Mortuary Affairs

MA
    Maintenance Allocation

MACOM
    Major Army command

Maint
    Maintenance

MAJ
    Major

MAPEX
    Map exercise

MBA
    Main Battle Area

MBT
    Main Battle Tank

MC4
    Medical Communications for Combat Casualty Care

MCA
    Movement Control Agency

MCC
    Movement control center

MCO
    Movement control officer

MCS
    Maneuver Control System

MCSR
    Materiel condition status report

MCT
    Maneuver Control Team

Mech
    Mechanized

MEDEVAC
Medical evacuation

MEDLOG-D
Medical logistics division

MEDSOM
Medical supply optical maintenance

METL
Mission essential task list

METT-T
Mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available

METT-TC
Mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

MHE
Material Handling Equipment

MIJI
Meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

MIA
Missing in Action

MIL
Master incident list

MILCOM
Missile command

MILES
Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

MMC
Materiel management center

MNS
Mission Needs Statement

MOB
  Mobilization

MOBEX
  Mobilization exercise

MOBPLAN
  Mobilization Plan

MOGAS
  Motor gasoline

MOOTW
  Military Operations Other Than War (Joint Only)

MOPP
  Mission oriented protective posture

MOS
  Military occupational specialty

MOUT
  Military operations in urban terrain

MP
  Military police

MQS
  Military qualification standards

MRO
  Materiel release order

MSDS
  Material Safety Data Sheets

MSR
  Main supply route

MST
  Maintenance Support Team

MTMC
  Military Traffic Management Command

MTOE/TDA
    Modification table of organization and equipment/tables of distribution and allowances

MTP
    Mission training plan

MTS
    Movement Tracking System

MTW
    Major Theaters of War

MWR
    Morale, welfare, and recreation

NATO
    North Atlantic Treaty Organization

NBC
    Nuclear, biological, and chemical

NCO
    Noncommissioned officer

NCOIC
    Noncommissioned officer in charge

NCS
    Net control station

NGO
    Non-government Organization

NLT
    Not later than

OC
    Observer Controllers

OCOKA
    Observation, Cover and Concealment, Obstacles, Key Terrain, Avenues of Approach

OCONUS
    Outside of the Continental United States

OEG
    Operational exposure guidance

OFS
    Officer Foundation System

OIC
    Officer in charge

OP
    Observation post

OPCON
    Operational control

OPFOR
    Opposing forces

OPLAN
    Operations plan

OPLOG PLNR
    Operations Logistics Planner

OPORD
    Operations order

OPSEC
    Operations security

OPSECREP
    OPSEC Activities Report

OPTEMPO
    Operational tempo

ORF
    Operation readiness float

Pam
    Pamphlet

PAO
    Public Affairs Office

PASR
> Personnel Accounting/Strength Reporting

PCE
> Protective Clothing and Equipment

PDF
> Principal direction of fire

PERSTAT
> Personnel Status

PERSTEMPO
> High Personnel Tempo

PIR
> Priority intelligence requirement

PLF
> Parachute Landing Falls

PLL
> Prescribed load list

PLT
> Platoon

PMCS
> Preventive maintenance checks and services

PMCT
> Port movement control team

PMO
> Personnel Management Office

POD
> Port of Debarkation

POL
> Petroleum, oils, and lubricants

POM
> Preparation for overseas movement

POV
>Privately Owned Vehicle

POW
>Prisoner of war

PPE
>Personal protective equipment

PSA
>Port support activity

PSAR
>Personnel Daily Summary Report

PSC
>Personnel Service Company

PSS
>Personnel service support

PT
>Physical training

PVO
>Private Volunteer Organization

PX
>Post Exchange

QA
>Quality assurance

QA/QC
>Quality assurance/quality control

QAR
>Quality Acceptance Report

QASP
>Quality assurance surveillance plan

QM
>Quartermaster

QMC&S
Quartermaster Center and School

QRF
Quick Reaction Force

QT
Quart

QTB
Quarterly training briefing

Qty
Quantity

RAA
Redeployment Assembly Area

RACO
Rear area combat operations

RAOC
Rear area operations center

RATT
Radio teletype

RC
Reserve Component

RCPOC
Rear command post operations center

Recon
Reconnaissance

RP
Release point

RQR
Requirement readiness

RSO&I
Reception, staging, onward movement, and integration

RSOP
Readiness Standing Operating Procedure

RT
Receiver transmitter

RTD
Return to duty

RWI
Radio and wire integration

S1
Adjutant (US Army)

S2
Battalion intelligence officer

S3
Battalion operations officer

S4
Supply officer (US Army)

S6
Signal Officer

SA
Staging area

SAMS
Standard Army Maintenance System

SARSS
Standard Army Retail Supply System

SASO
Support and Stability Operations

SCPE
Simplified collective protection equipment

SDO
Staff duty officer

SDT (self-development test)
    A test of your ability to perform your job in your MOS at your present skill level.

SIDPERS
    Standard Installation/Division Personnel System

SIGINT
    Signal Intelligence

SIGSEC
    Signal security

SITREP
    Situation report

SJA
    Staff Judge Advocate

SM
    Soldier's manual

SMCT
    Soldier's manual of common tasks

SMFT
    Semi-trailer-mounted fabric tank

SOI
    Signal operating instructions

SOP
    Standing Operating Procedure

SP
    Start point

SPBS-R
    Standard Property Book System - Redesign

SPO
    Security Plans Officer

SPOD
    Seaport of Debarkation

SPOE
> Seaport of Embarkation

SPOTREP
> Spot report

SPT
> Support

SRP
> Sealift Readiness Program

SSC
> Small Scale Contingencies

SSI
> Specialty Skill Identifier

STAFFEX
> Staff exercise

STAMIS
> Standard Army Management Information System

STF (1)
> Staff

STP
> Soldier training publication

STRAC
> Standards in training commission

STRIKEWARN
> Strike warning

STX
> Situational training exercise

SUP
> Supply

SVC
> Service

TAA
Tactical Assembly Area

T&EO
Training and evaluation outline

TAACOM
Theater Army Area Command

TACAIR
Tactical air

TADSS
Training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations

TAMMC
Theater Army Material Management Center

TAMMIS
Theater Army Medical Management Information System

Task - Critical task
A collective or individual task a unit or individual must perform to accomplish their mission and duties and to survive in war or operations other than war (OOTW). Critical tasks must be trained.

Task - Individual task
The lowest behavioral level in a job or duty that is performed for its own sake. It should support a collective task; it usually supports another individual task.

Task - Shared task - Collective
A task that may apply to some units that have different proponents or to different echelon/TOE units within a single proponent's authority. The task, conditions, standards, task steps, and performance measures do not change.

Task - Shared task - Individual
An individual task performed by soldiers from different jobs and/or different skill or organizational levels. Shared tasks are usually identified when conducting an analysis of a specific job. Example: The lieutenant and sergeant in the same platoon perform some of the same tasks.

Task condition
See "Condition."

Task Performance Steps
The required unit/individual actions that must be performed to accomplish the

critical task. Each step must be specific and detailed and contain only one action or unit of work. Note: A collective task step may be a supporting individual or collective task.

TB MED
    Technical bulletin (medical)

TC (1)
    Training circular

TC-AIMS II
    Transportation Coordinator's Automated Information For Movement System

TCF
    Tactical combat force

TDY
    Temporary Duty

TEMPEST
    An unclassified short name referring to investigations and studies of comprising emanations. It includes both emanations security and emission security. Security class involving compromise of classified data through interception of electronic impulses.

TEWT
    Training exercise without troops

TG
    Trainer's guide

TM
    Technical manual

TMCA
    Theater movement control agency

TMIP
    Theater medical information program

TMO
    Transportation movement officer

TNG
    Training

TOC
>Tactical operations center

TOCEX
>Tactical operations center exercise

TOE
>Table of organization and equipment

TOPNS
>Theater of operations

TPFDL
>Time-phased force deployment list

TRADOC
>United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

TRK
>Truck

TSB
>Theater staging base

TSC
>Theater Support Command

TSOP
>Tactical standing operating procedure

TTP
>Tactics, Techniques and Procedures

TWDS
>Tactical water distribution system

UAA
>Unit Assembly Area

UCMJ
>Uniform Code of Military Justice

UIC
Unit Identification Code

ULLS
Unit Level Logistics System

UMC
Unit Movement Coordinator

UMD
Unit movement coordinator; unit movement code

UMO
Unit Movement Officer

UMT
Unit ministry team

U.S.
United States

USA
United States Army

USAR
United States Army Reserve

USAREUR
United States Army, Europe

USCS
United States Customs Service

USDA
United States Department of Agriculture

USR
Unit Status Report

WARNO
Warning Order

WIA
Wounded In Action

XO
  Executive officer

References

Army Regulations

AR 165-1	Chaplain Activities in the United States Army 27 February 1998
AR 190-11	Physical Security of Arms, Ammunition, and Explosives 30 September 1993
AR 190-13	The Army Physical Security Program 30 September 1993
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Detained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement 21 February 1997
AR 200-2	Environmental Effects of Army Actions 23 December 1988
AR 200-3	National Resources -- Land, Forest, and Wildlife Management 28 February 1995
AR 200-5	Pest Management 29 October 1999
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting 1 September 1997
AR 220-45	Duty Rosters 15 November 1975
AR 27-50	Status of Forces Policies, Procedures, and Information 15 December 1989
AR 30-1	The Army Food Service Program 1 January 1985
AR 30-21	The Army Field Feeding System 24 September 1990
AR 310-25	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (Short Title: AD) 15 October 1983
AR 350-1	Army Training 1 August 1981
AR 350-17	Noncommissioned Officer Development Program 31 May 1991
AR 381-20	The Army Counterintelligence Program 15 November 1993
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records 1 November 1994
AR 525-13	The Army Combating Terrorism Program 10 September 1998
AR 570-9	Host Nation Support 9 October 1990
AR 600-100	Army Leadership 7 September 1993
AR 600-25	Salutes, Honors, and Visits of Courtesy 16 May 1970
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System 11 March 1988
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance 20 October 1994
AR 600-8-10	Leaves and Passes 1 July 1994
AR 600-8-101	Personnel Processing (In-and-Out and Mobilization Processing) (Reprinted W/Basic Incl C1) 12 December 1989

AR 600-8-104	Military Personnel Information Management/Records 27 April 1992
AR 600-8-105	Military Orders 28 October 1994
AR 600-8-11	Reassignment 1 October 1990
AR 600-8-22	Military Awards 25 February 1995
AR 600-85	Army Substance Abuse Program (ASAP) 1 October 2001
AR 600-8-6	Personnel Accounting and Strength Reporting (Reprinted W/Basic Incl C1) 20 May 1994
AR 600-9	The Army Weight Control Program 1 September 1986
AR 601-280	Army Retention Program 31 March 1999
AR 608-18	The Army Family Advocacy Program (This Item is Included on EM 0001) 1 September 1995
AR 623-105	Officer Evaluation Reporting System 1 October 1997
AR 623-205	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Reporting System 17 December 2001
AR 635-10	Processing Personnel for Separation (Reprinted W/Basic Incl C1-8) (This Item is Included on EM 0001) 1 July 1984
AR 635-200	Enlisted Personnel 1 November 2000
AR 670-1	Wear and Appearance of Army Uniforms and Insignia 1 September 1992
AR 700-4	Logistics Assistance 30 June 1995
AR 70-12	Fuels and Lubricants Standardization Policy for Equipment Design, Operation, and Logistic Support (Included on EM 0001) 1 May 1997
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy below the Wholesale Level 31 October 1997
AR 715-27	Petroleum Contract Quality Assurance Manual (included on EM 0001) 10 February 1988

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1804	Petroleum Sample 1 November 1967
DA FORM 2077	Petroleum Products Laboratory Analysis Report 1 November 1967
DA FORM 4193	Petroleum Products Pump Station Hourly Operations Record 1 January 1974
DA FORM 4702-R	Monthly Bulk Petroleum Accounting Summary 1 April 1985
DA FORM 4786	Petroleum Products -Tank Farm Intake Record 2 April 1979
DA FORM 4818	Petroleum Products - Pump Station Operations Log 1 October 1979
DA FORM 5456-R	Water Point Inspection 1 October 1985

Field Manuals

FM 100-10	Combat Service Support 3 October 1995

FM 100-10-2	Contracting Support on the Battlefield 4 August 1999
FM 100-14	Risk Management 23 April 1998
FM 100-15	Corps Operations 29 October 1996
FM 100-17	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization 28 October 1992
FM 100-17-3	Reception, Staging, Onward Movement, and Integration 17 March 1999
FM 100-17-5	Redeployment 29 September 1999
FM 100-20	Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict 5 December 1990
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A) 30 September 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class 1 Operations Management 18 April 1996
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations 17 March 1992
FM 10-23-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Garrison Food Preparation and Class I Operations Management 30 September 1993
FM 10-52	Water Supply in Theaters of Operations 11 July 1990
FM 10-602	Headquarters and Headquarters Units, Petroleum and Water Distribution Organization 12 September 1996
FM 10-67	Petroleum Supply in Theaters of Operations 16 February 1983
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations 2 April 1998
FM 10-67-2	Petroleum Laboratory Testing and Operations 2 April 1997
FM 11-32	Combat Net Radio Operations 15 October 1990
FM 11-72	Communications-Electronics Fundamentals: Digital Computers 30 September 1977
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine 9 September 1994
FM 14-100	Financial Management Operations 7 May 1997
FM 16-1	Religious Support 26 May 1995
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation 21 June 2000
FM 21-11	First Aid for Soldiers 27 October 1988
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training 30 September 1992
FM 21-31	Topographic Symbols (Reprinted w/ Basic Incl C1) 19 June 1961
FM 21-60	Visual Signals 30 September 1987
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier 3 August 1984

FM 21-76	Survival 5 June 1992
FM 22-100	Army Leadership 31 August 1999
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control 29 September 1994
FM 22-6	Guard Duty (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1) 17 September 1971
FM 24-16	Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records, and Reports 7 April 1978
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques 30 September 1987
FM 24-22	Communications-Electronics Management System (CEMS) 30 June 1977
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI" 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions 2 October 1990
FM 25-4	How to Conduct Training Exercises 10 September 1984
FM 25-5	Training for Mobilization and War 25 January 1985
FM 27-10	the Law of Land Warfare 18 July 1956
FM 27-2	Your Conduct In Combat Under the Law Of War 23 November 1984
FM 3-0	Operations 14 June 2001
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals (MCWP 3-3.7.1) 8 May 1996
FM 3-100.4	Environmental Considerations in Military Operations [MCRP 4-11B] 15 June 2000
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance [FMFM 11-20] 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security 8 January 2001
FM 3-21	Chemical Accident Contamination Control (Reprinted W/Basic Incl C1) 23 February 1978
FM 3-25.26	Map Reading and Land Navigation 20 July 2001
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance (FMFM 11-17) 16 November 1992
FM 3-4	NBC Protection (FMFM 11-9) 29 May 1992
FM 31-70	Basic Cold Weather Manual 12 April 1968
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations 27 September 1994
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield 8 July 1994
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counter Reconnaissance 19 June 1991
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis 15 March 1990
FM 34-54	Technical Intelligence 30 January 1998

FM 34-60	Counterintelligence 3 October 1995
FM 34-80	Electronic Warfare Operations 15 April 1986
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination MCWP 3-37.3 28 July 2000
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination MCWP 3-37.3 28 July 2000
FM 3-7	NBC Handbook 29 September 1994
FM 4-25.12	Unit Field Sanitation Team 25 January 2002
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures 1 September 2000
FM 41-10	Civil Affairs Operations 14 February 2000
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense 1 June 1999
FM 46-1	Public Affairs 30 May 1997
FM 5-102	Counter Mobility 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability 10 June 1985
FM 54-40	Area Support Group 3 October 1995
FM 55-1	Transportation Operations 3 October 1995
FM 55-10	Movement Control 9 February 1999
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations 27 June 1997
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment 3 October 1995
FM 55-20	Army Rail Transport Units and Operations 1 June 2000
FM 6-22.5	Combat Stress (MCRP 6-11C; NTTP 1-15M) 23 June 2000
FM 63-11	Logistics Support Element Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 8 October 1996
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions 20 May 1991
FM 63-2-1	Division Support Command Light Infantry, Airborne, and Air Assault Divisions 16 November 1992
FM 63-3	Corps Support Command 30 September 1993
FM 63-4	Combat Service Support Operations Theater - Army Area Command 24 September 1984
FM 7-0	Training the Force 22 October 2002
FM 71-100	Armored & Mechanized Division Operations (How to Fight) 28 August 1996
FM 71-100-2	Infantry Division Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 31 August 1993
FM 71-100-3	Air Assault Division Operations for Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 29 October 1996
FM 8-10	Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations (01 Mar 91) 1 March 1991
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures 16 April 2000
FM 8-34	Food Sanitation for the Supervisor, 30 December 1983 30 December 1983

FM 8-51	Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (C1, 30 Jan 98) (29 Sep 94) 29 September 1994
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support 9 September 1994

Other Product Types

FORSCOM FORM

285-4-R	Unit Air Movement Planning Worksheet
FORSCOM REG 55-1	Unit Movement Planning 1 October 1995

Army Regulations

AR 215-1	Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Activities and Non-appropriated Fund Instrumentalities 25 October 1998
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting 1 September 1997
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM) 15 June 1973
AR 25-1	The Army Information Resources Management Program 15 January 2000
AR 25-400-2	The Modern Army Record Keeping System (MARKS) 1 October 2000
AR 27-10	Legal Services: Military Justice 24 June 1996
AR 350-1	Army Training 1 August 1981
AR 380-19	Information Systems Security 27 February 1998
AR 380-19-1	(C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U) 17 September 1990
AR 380-40	(O) Policy for Safeguarding and Controlling Communications Security (COMSEC) Material (U) 30 June 2000
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program 23 May 1988
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC) 3 March 1995
AR 600-8-104	Military Personnel Information Management/Records 27 April 1992
AR 608-1	Army Community Service Program (This Item is Included on EM 0001) 1 October 1999
AR 608-18	The Army Family Advocacy Program (This Item is Included on EM 0001) 1 September 1995
AR 614-185	Requisitions and Assignment Instructions for Officers 15 March 1983
AR 614-200	Enlisted Assignments and Utilization Management (This Item is Included on EM 0001) 31 October 1997

| AR 710-2 | Inventory Management Supply Policy below the Wholesale Level 31 October 1997 |
| AR 715-27 | Petroleum Contract Quality Assurance Manual (included on EM 0001) 10 February 1988 |

Department of Army Pamphlets

| DA PAM 710-2-2 | Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures 30 September 1998 |

Department of Defense Publications

DOD 4140.25-M	DOD Management of Bulk Petroleum Products, Natural Gas and Coal Volumes I - IV 22 June 1994
DOD 4500.32-R VOL 1	Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures (Reprinted W/Basic Incl C1-5) 15 March 1987
DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2	Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures (MILSTAMP): Transportation Account Codes (TACS) (Reprinted W/Basic Incl C1-2) 15 February 1987

Joint Publications

| JP 3-10 | Joint Doctrines for Rear Area Operations 28 May 1996 |

Other Product Types

DOD DIR 4500.9	Transportation and Traffic Management 26 January 1989
MIL-HDBK 200G	Quality Surveillance Hand book for Fuels, Lubricants, and Related Products 1 July 1987
MIL-STD 290E	Packaging of Petroleum and Related Products. 1 August 1985.
STANAG 2115	Fuel Consumption Unit. 1 September 1987.

Technical Bulletins

| TB MED 577 | Occupational and Environmental Health: Sanitary Control and Surveillance of Field Water Supplies 7 March 1986 |

Training Circulars

| TC 25-20 | A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews 30 September 1993 |

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

NONE

QUESTIONAIRE

MTP NUMBER: _____   DATE: _____

MTP TITLE: _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided for your use. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to: Commander, U.S. Army Combined Arms Support Command, and 401 1st Street, Suite 235A, ATTN: ATCL-AL, Fort Lee, Virginia 23801

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1.	What is your position (CDR, XO, Plt Ldr, Plt Sgt, Section Chief, Section NCOIC, etc.)? _____

2.	How long have you served in this position? _____

3.	How long have you served in this unit? _____

4.	What is your component? A. AC B. RC

5.	What is your unit?	A.	CONUS	B.	USAREUR
		C.	USARPAC	D.	8TH USA
		E.	Other (specify) _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GERNERAL.

6.	How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?
	A.	Has made training worse.
	_____
	_____
	B.	Has made training better.
	_____
	_____

C.   Has had no effect on training.

_____
_____

D.   Do not know or do not have an opinion.

_____
_____

7.   How easy is this product to use, when compared to other training products?

A.   More difficult.

_____
_____

B.   Easier.

_____
_____

C.   About the same.

_____
_____

D.   Do not know or do not have an opinion.

_____
_____

8.   What part of the MTP was least useful?

A.   Chapter 1, Unit Training.

_____
_____

B.   Chapter 2, Training Matrix.

_____
_____

C.   Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.

_____
_____

D.   Chapter 4, Training Exercises.

_____
_____

E.   Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
_____
_____

F.   Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
_____
_____

G.   Do not know or do not have an opinion.
_____
_____

9.   What part of the MTP was most useful?
A.   Chapter 1, Unit Training.
_____
_____

B.   Chapter 2, Training Matrix.
_____
_____

C.   Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
_____
_____

D.   Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
_____
_____

E.   Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
_____
_____

F.   Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
_____
_____

G.   Do not know or do not have an opinion.
_____
_____

10.   What chapter of the MTP was the most difficult to understand?
A.   Chapter 1, Unit Training.
_____
_____

B.   Chapter 2, Training Matrix.
_____
_____

C.   Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
_____
_____

D.   Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
_____
_____

E.   Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.

_____
_____

F.   Chapter 6, External Evaluation.

_____
_____

G.   Do not know or do not have an opinion.

_____
_____

11.   What was the easiest part of the MTP to understand?

A.   Chapter 1, Unit Training.

_____
_____

B.   Chapter 2, Training Matrix.

_____
_____

C.   Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.

_____
_____

D.   Chapter 4, Training Exercises.

_____
_____

E.   Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.

_____
_____

F.   Chapter 6, External Evaluation.

_____
_____

G.   Do not know or do not have an opinion.

_____
_____

THE FOLLOWING QUSTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES (STX AND FTX).

12.   The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well did they fulfill their intended purpose?

A.   They did not prepare the unit at all.

_____
_____

B.   They helped, but only provided 20% or less of my unit's training requirements.

_____
_____

C.   They helped, but only provided 21% to 50% of my unit's training

requirements.

_____
_____

D.	They helped, but only provided 51% to 80% of my unit's training requirements.

_____
_____

E.	They provided 81% or more of my unit's training requirements.

_____
_____

13.	Would you recommend that any STX or TX be added or deleted from the MTP (specify FTX or STX)?

_____

14.	What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A.	Too many pages.

_____
_____

B.	Hard to read and understand.

_____
_____

C.	Needs more illustrations.

_____
_____

D.	Needs more information on how to set up the exercises.

_____
_____

E.	Needs more information on leader training.

_____
_____

F.	Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises.

_____
_____

G.	Needs more information on support and resources.

_____
_____

H.	Needs more information on normally attached elements.

_____
_____

I.	Does not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.

_____
_____

J.	Do not know or have no opinion.

_____

15.   What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A.   Too many pages.

_____
_____

B.   Hard to read and understand.

_____
_____

C.   Needs more illustrations.

_____
_____

D.   Needs more information on how to set up the exercises.

_____
_____

E.   Needs more information on leader training.

_____
_____

F.   Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises.

_____
_____

G.   Needs more information on support and resources.

_____
_____

H.   Needs more information on normally attached elements.

_____
_____

I.   Does not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.

_____
_____

J.   Do not know or have no opinion.

_____
_____

16.   How many STX's or FTX's have you trained or participated in personally?

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP.

17.   What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

     A.   Leave it out altogether.

_____
_____

     B.   Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises.

_____
_____

     C.   Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation.

_____
_____

     D.   The performance measures are too detailed.

_____
_____

     E.   The performance measures are not detailed enough.

_____
_____

     F.   The performance measures do not adequately address those elements
that are normally attached in wartime.

_____
_____

     G.   Do not change, chapter is fine.

_____
_____

     H.   Do not know or have no opinion.

_____
_____

18.   What changes would you make to this Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

     A.   Leave it out altogether.

_____
_____

     B.   Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises.

_____
_____

C.   Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation.

_____

D.   The performance measures are too detailed.

_____

E.   The performance measures are not detailed enough.

_____
_____

F.   The performance measures do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.

_____
_____

G.   Do not change, chapter is fine.

_____
_____

H.   Do not know or have no opinion.

_____
_____

19.   Additional Comments:
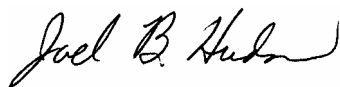
_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

JOHN M. KEANE
General, United States Army
Acting Chief of Staff

Official:

JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0318907

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121295, requirements for ARTEP 10-602-MTP